

PA

2087

G36

DIONYTHURSP
LATIN GRAMMAR



Class PA2087

Book G36

SMITHSONIAN DEPOSIT

2D
3

STONYHURST
LATIN GRAMMAR

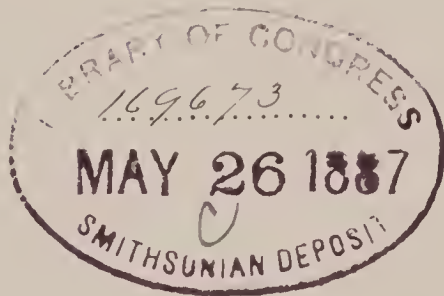
To the "Smithsonian
Institution"

From

the Author,

STONYHURST
LATIN GRAMMAR

BY
✓
REV. JOHN GERARD, S.J.
11



WILLIAM BLACKWOOD AND SONS
EDINBURGH AND LONDON
MDCCCLXXXVI

PA²⁰⁸⁷
, G36

10 v. June 13, 1906
m. V.C. - Mar. 5, 1910,

P R E F A C E.

IF one more Latin Grammar is added to the existing multitude, it is not without a very definite object. That object is to attempt to teach by exhibiting principles rather than by formulating rules; to enable the learner at each step to perceive reasons as well as facts, and in so doing, to recognise the universal laws which govern all language. It is the singular fitness of Latin for such a work that secures for it the position which it holds in the field of education.

In order to ensure that each step taken shall be understood, a beginning must be made with something already known. Any one who can talk his own language at all correctly, implicitly possesses the fundamental principles of grammar. By analysis these are rendered explicit, and become the basis of deductions which serve as guiding lines whereby to survey and map out the whole of the subject. We begin, therefore, with explanation of fundamental principles, exemplified by means of English alone, up to that point where the inflexional character of Latin seems to make it a fitter instrument for the work.

Throughout, the arrangement is based on the analysis of the sentence, inflexions and constructions being alike treated according to the part they play in the expression

of thought. It is the thing thought which determines the form of the thing said, and forms of words or of clauses are admitted or not in practice, according as they do or do not satisfy the sense to be conveyed. The early recognition of the truths that each Case, Tense, and Mood differs from the rest in its nature ; that each has its own function as well as its own form ; that it is used when the meaning it conveys is required, and not otherwise, and, instead of memory-rules, a perception of the true nature and function of these various parts,—will, it is thought, enable a student to acquire a knowledge of the language, not only with more ease, but in more solid fashion.

The book is intended entirely for class-work, for in all teaching the most important factor is the living voice of the master, which nothing can replace. It has not, therefore, been attempted to construct a text which shall be wholly self-interpreting. At the same time, it is believed that, once understood, the various enunciations will suffice for the scholar's own use.

Constant reference of all points to analysis has been found to necessitate various departures from generally received classification, and some novelties of terminology. In particular may be mentioned the distinction of the Perfect and Preterite tenses, of Connective Adverbs and Conjunctions, and especially of Oblique and Indirect constructions.

While it is our object to reduce memory-work to a minimum, a school-grammar must contain a record of all grammatical facts which schoolboys may be expected to know ; and as it is not advisable in practice to have to consult different parts of a book for information upon one subject, less usual or exceptional forms and constructions are dealt with by means of notes attached to the various articles.

The form given for analysis is, with a few slight modifications, that of Mr Thring's 'Elements of Grammar.' To the same high authority thanks are due for valuable suggestions and criticisms.

Reference is throughout to *sections* ; and in order that the number of each may indicate the nature of its contents, the following system has been adopted : The sections of the Introduction are numbered from 1 upwards ; those of the Accidence, from 101 ; of the Syntax, from 201 ; of the Appendices, from 301 ; although in no case are all the intervening numbers occupied.

The letter *a* added to a figure indicates a note or notes on the section so numbered. The symbol $*_{*}$ indicates an observation preceding, and *N.B.* an observation following, the section to which it refers.

STONYHURST, *September* 1886.

CONTENTS.

Part I.—Introduction.

	PAGE
Words and Sentences,	I
Parts of Speech,	4
Nouns and Pronouns,	4
Verbs and Complements,	6
Adjectives,	9
Adverbs,	10
Cases and Prepositions,	12
Conjunctions,	14
Analysis of Sentences,	15
Sentences—Simple, Complex, and Compound,	15
Comparison,	17
The Verb,	19
,, Finite and Infinite,	19
Moods and Tenses,	20
Agreement,	23
Inflexion,	24

Part II.—Latin Accidence.

Nouns,	25
First Declension,	28
Second ,,	29
Third ,,	31
Fourth ,,	34
Fifth ,,	35
Adjectives,	40
Pronouns,	47
Determinative Adjectives,	48

Relatives,	50
Interrogatives,	51
Indefinites,	51
Correlatives,	54
Numerals,	55
Verbs,	60
The Verb Infinitive,	65
Regular Verbs, First Conjugation,	70
,, Second ,,	73
,, Third ,,	76
,, Fourth ,,	79
Notes on the Conjugations,	82
Different Kinds of Verbs,	84
Table of Verbs,	95
Particles or Indeclinable Words,	103

Part III.—Syntax.

Syntax,	106
Verb and Subject,	106
Verb and Complement,	108
Qualification of Nouns,	110
Relative Clause,	112
Cases, with Verbs and Adjectives,	114
Description,	114
Source and Separation,	116
Place,	118
Space,	118
Time,	120
Amount,	120
Accusation,	120
Ablative Absolute,	120
Other Case Constructions,	122
Accusative with Intransitives,	122
Genitive,	124
Dative, Indirect Object,	126
Comparison,	128
Synopsis of Case Uses,	130
Impersonal Verbs,	131
Active Impersonals,	132
Passive ,,	132
Syntax of Moods,	132
Preliminary Definitions,	132

Mood Notions,	134
Tense ,,	135
Examples of Tense Sequence,	136
Syntax of the Complex Sentence,	137
Different Kinds of Clauses,	137
Mood of Dependent Verbs,	144
Oratio Obliqua,	146
Moods in Adjective and Adverb Clauses,	150
Comparative Clauses,	154
Time Clauses,	154
Concessive Clauses,	156
The Compound Sentence,	158
Synopsis of Mood Constructions,	158

Appendices.

Form for Analysis of Sentences,	161
The Alphabet,	167
Roots and Stems,	169
Latin Numeration,	174
Roman Measures of Time,	175
,, Money and Weights,	178
,, Measures of Length,	180
,, ,, Capacity,	180
,, Names,	181
Prosody,	182
Figures of Speech,	184
Abbreviations used in Latin,	189
Periods of Latin Literature,	190
INDEX,	191

ERRATA.

Par.

208. *For* "urbi Galliæ," *read* "urbs Galliæ."

265*a*. *For* "He says that he loves his brother, which brother,"
&c., *read* "He says that his brother is sick, which
brother," &c.

276. *For* "quod tyrantum esset," *read* "quod tyrannus esset."

283*a* (2). *For* "I should be mad," *read* "I should tell a lie."

STONYHURST

LATIN GRAMMAR.

PART I.

INTRODUCTION.

WORDS AND SENTENCES.

1. A word is a letter or combination of letters conveying a meaning—

Man, good, I, run, quickly, from, O !

N.B.—Different peoples often convey the same meaning by words altogether different—

Man, *vir*, ἀνήρ. Run, *currere*, τρέχειν.

2. A sentence is a word or combination of words in which something is said about something (*sententia* = a judgment)—

The man runs ; the boy is diligent ; the horse will be sold.

3. A complete sentence must therefore contain two parts—one naming the thing spoken of, the other saying something about it.

4. Words which name things are **Nouns** or **Nouns Substantive** (*nomen* = a name)—

Shakespeare, statue, stone.

5. Words which say something are **Verbs** (*verbum* = a word)—

Run, write, raise.

6. Every complete sentence must contain a noun, or something equivalent to a noun, naming the thing spoken of.

This is called the **Subject**.

7. Every complete sentence must also contain a verb saying something about the subject.

What is said about the subject is called the **Predicate**.

N.B.—(1) Something may be said in three ways—

(a) As a **statement**—

The boy learns his lesson.

The **subject** is the thing spoken about—

The boy.

The **predicate** what is stated about it—

Learns his lesson.

(b) As a **question**—

Does he learn his lesson?

The **subject** is the thing asked about—

He.

The **predicate** what is asked about it—

Does learn his lesson?

(c) As a **command**—

Learn you your lesson.

The **subject** is that which is told to do something—

You.

The **predicate** is that which the subject is told to do—

Learn your lesson.

N.B.—(2) A sentence as spoken or written may be incomplete—that is, the subject or predicate may not be expressed by any word, the mind of the hearer being left to supply it—

“Go!” = go *you*.

“You said so.” “I?” = I *said so?*

“Heads or Tails?” = *do you guess* “Heads,” or *do you guess* “Tails”?

This is often the case in commands where the subject is unmistakable.

Words, the sense of which is left to be supplied by the mind, are said to be **understood**.

N.B.—(3) A **phrase** is a combination of words conveying some meaning but *not saying* anything, and therefore not forming a sentence—

Once upon a time ; playing fast and loose ; three acres and a cow.

8. Summary—

- (1) A **word** is a letter or combination of letters conveying a meaning.
- (2) A **sentence** is a word or combination of words saying something about something.
- (3) A **noun** is a word which is the *name* of something.
- (4) A **verb** is a word which *says* something.
- (5) The **subject** of a sentence is the thing spoken of.
- (6) The **predicate** is that which is said of the subject.
- (7) The subject must be a **noun**, or the equivalent of a noun.
- (8) The predicate must contain a **verb**.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

9. Speech, or Language, is made up of sentences. The different kinds of words which help to make up sentences are called **Parts of Speech**.

10. Only two parts of speech are essential to a sentence : the **noun** for the **subject**, and the **verb** for the **predicate**.

11. Other parts of speech have various uses—

(a) Taking the place of nouns.

(b) Adding something to the meaning of nouns or of verbs.

(c) Joining words together.

N.B.—(1) When one word adds something to the meaning of another, it is said to **qualify** it.

N.B.—(2) Some words, as will be seen later, qualify nouns and verbs *indirectly*, by qualifying the words which qualify them—

He is *very* good ; he writes *very* well.

N.B.—(3) A word qualifying a noun shows something about the thing *named*—

A *good* man.

A word qualifying a verb shows something about the thing *done*—

He writes *well*.

NOUNS AND PRONOUNS.

12. Nouns are Proper or Common.

(a) A proper noun names an individual person or thing (*proprium* = one's own)—

Cæsar, Thames, John.

- (b) **A common noun names a class of things** (*commune* = shared by several)—

Man, river, gold.

13. A noun may in number be Singular or Plural.

- (a) **It is singular if it names one thing—**

Frenchman, soldier, steel.

- (b) **Plural if it names more than one—**

Frenchmen, soldiers, swords.

N.B.—In Greek and some other languages there is also a *dual* number, naming *two* things, the plural belonging to more than two.

14. Nouns may in gender be Masculine (*male*), **Feminine** (*female*), **or Neuter** (*neither*).

N.B.—In English the gender of a word follows the sex of the thing named. Nouns naming male things are masculine, naming female things feminine, naming things without life neuter. If we *personify* a thing without life (*i.e.*, consider it as a person), its name becomes masculine or feminine; as when we say of the sun, *he* shines; or of a ship, *she* sails. In Latin, and most languages, the nouns themselves are treated as things, and have a gender of their own, which frequently does not correspond to the sex of the thing.

15. Words which take the place of nouns are called Pronouns or Substantive Pronouns (*pro nomine* = for a noun)—

He made us—*i.e.*, God made men.

Cassius will free himself = Cassius will free **Cassius**.

N.B.—Such words alone are really *pronouns*, and should so be called. In future, when *nouns* are spoken of, *substantive pronouns* are to be included.

16. Words which represent **the person speaking** are said to be of the **First Person**.

Those which represent **the person spoken to** are of the **Second Person**.

Those which represent **the person or thing spoken of** are of the **Third Person**—

1st person, I, we, myself, ourselves.

2d person, thou, you, thyself, yourselves.

3d person, he, she, it, they, himself, herself, itself, themselves.

17. Pronouns are of the same gender as the nouns they represent.

18. Summary—

(1) A **proper noun** names an individual, a **common noun** a class.

(2) The **singular number** denotes one, the **plural** more than one.

(3) Nouns may, in **Gender**, be **Masculine**, **Feminine**, or **Neuter**.

(4) A **Pronoun** is a word which takes the place of a noun.

(5) The **1st Person** speaks, the **2d** is spoken to, the **3d** spoken of.

(6) A pronoun is of the gender of the noun it represents.

VERBS AND COMPLEMENTS.

19. A verb is of the same Person and Number as its Subject—

I am; he is; we are.

20. Only those verbs which by themselves express a complete meaning can by themselves form a Predicate—

I walk. Did you speak? Stay!

21. Some verbs express no complete meaning without the addition of another word. Such other word is called their **Complement** (*complementum* = a completion).

22. Copulative verbs join to their subject another word to qualify it. This other word is their complement (*copulare* = to couple)—

Cæsar was made **Consul**; the earth is **the Lord's**; he became famous.

N.B.—The same verb may be used without a complement or with one, with difference of force—

God **is** (= exists); God **is good**.

23. Verbs expressing an action which passes from the subject to something else require a noun to name that thing. This is called their **Object** (*objectum* = that exposed to the action)—

(1) The **Direct Object** of a verb denotes that upon which the action falls—

Brutus killed **Cæsar**; you wrote a **letter**; flattery does **harm**.

(2) The **Indirect Object** of a verb or other word denotes the term to which an action or quality has reference—

You wrote a letter **to the papers**; flattery does **you** harm; he is like **me**.

N.B.—The relation of the *direct object* to the verb taking it is **passive** (see 62)—

I give a book .∴ a book **is given**.

The relation of the *indirect object* to the word taking it is **not** passive—

I give **you** a book .∴ you **receive** it.

He is like **me** .∴ I **am** like him.

24. Verbs with a direct object are **Transitive**.

Verbs with no direct object are **Intransitive** (*transire* = to pass over).

25. Words with an indirect object are **Trajective** (*trajicere* = to throw across).

26. **Factitive verbs** join with their direct object another word to qualify it (*facere* = to make)—

They made *Cæsar Dictator*; the Britons painted *themselves* blue;
he calls *the book* his.

27. **Auxiliary verbs** are joined to parts of other verbs to assist in marking change of meaning (*auxilium* = a help)—

I was writing; I may write.

N.B.—(1) The same verb may sometimes be used either as an auxiliary and independently—

He did sigh; he did the work.

N.B.—(2) For *Modal Verbs* and their Complement, see 73 *N.B.*

28. Summary—

- (1) Verbs not making complete sense require a **complement**.
- (2) **Copulative verbs** predicate of their subject another word which is their complement.
- (3) The **Object** of a verb is that to which its action passes.
- (4) The **Direct Object** is that upon which the action directly falls.
- (5) The **Indirect Object** denotes the term to which an action or quality has reference.
- (6) Verbs with a direct object are **Transitive**, with none **Intransitive**.
- (7) Verbs with an indirect object are **Trajective**.
- (8) **Factitive Verbs** predicate of their object another word.

ADJECTIVES (*adjectivum* = added on).

29. Adjectives are words which qualify nouns—

A **black** horse ; the **three** kingdoms ; **my** book.

N.B.—Adjectives are sometimes called *nouns adjective*. It is better to keep the name of *nouns* for *nouns substantive*, which alone *name things*.

30. Adjectives qualify nouns in two ways—

- (1) Describing the thing named (*Descriptive adjectives*).
- (2) Explaining what thing is named (*Determinative adjectives*).

31. Descriptive adjectives show what the thing is—

- (1) In quality (*Adjectives of quality*)—

A **good** man ; a **large** house ; **red** and **white** roses.

- (2) In quantity (*Numerals*)—

Four fingers and a thumb ; **half** an hour.

32. Determinative adjectives show—

- (1) Whose the thing is (*Possessives*)—

My book ; the **Tuscan** army.

- (2) Which the thing is—

- (a) **Demonstratives** point the thing out (*demonstrare* = to point out)—

That man ; **this** book ; **these** things.

- (b) **Relatives** point to a preceding noun which they connect with a new predicate. The preceding noun is the antecedent (*relatio* = a reference ; *antecedere* = to go before)—

The man **whom** I saw ; the house **that** Jack built.

- (c) **Indefinites** specify vaguely, pointing out nothing in particular—

Each and **all** ; **some** one or **other** ; for aught I know.

(*d*) Interrogatives ask to have a thing or something about it named—

What is this? Gold. Whose is it? Mine.

N.B.—*Demonstratives, Relatives, Indefinites, and Interrogatives*, are often used alone, as if they were nouns.

It is important to remember that their nature is adjectival, and that the same meaning can be always expressed using a noun—

The house **which** house Jack built ; **whose** gold is it?

33. A word qualifying a noun may be an attribute or a predicate.

It is an attribute if joined to the noun directly, a predicate if joined by a verb—

The **consul** Aulus ; Aulus **was** dictator ; he bought the **red** cloth ; he **died** the cloth **red**.

34. Summary—

(1) Adjectives are words which qualify nouns.

(2) An adjective joined directly to a noun is an attribute ; joined by a verb, a predicate.

ADVERBS.

35. Adverbs are words which qualify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs.

36. Adverbs do for verbs what adjectives do for nouns, and are, like adjectives, descriptive or determinative.

Descriptive adverbs—

(1) Adverbs of Quality add circumstances of time, place, or manner—

He will come **soon** ; Cæsar marched **forth** ; the boy writes **well**.

(2) Numeral adverbs add circumstances of number—

The cock crew **twice**.

Determinative adverbs—

(3) Demonstrative adverbs point to a particular circumstance—

I was happy **then** ; there did he die ; so did he speak.

(4) Relative adverbs, like relative adjectives, point to an antecedent, and connect it with a new predicate—

I was happy **then** **when** you knew me ; there did he die **where** he had lived ; so did he speak **as** I have said.

(5) Indefinite adverbs specify circumstances vaguely—

He got through **somehow** ; **somewhere** or other.

(6) Interrogative adverbs, like interrogative adjectives, ask for instead of giving information—

When did he come ? **how** goes the world ?

37. Connective adverbs qualify words in two sentences, showing connection between them—

If you say so you are wrong ; **when** he came I saw him ; he did **as** he was bid.

N.B.—Relative adverbs are always connective.

38. Relative adjectives and adverbs correspond to Demonstratives—

He—who ; such—as ; then—when.

Such pairs of words in correspondence are called **Correlatives**.

39. Adverbs also qualify adjectives and adverbs derived from them—

A **very** good man ; **exceedingly** well done.

40. Summary—

- (1) Adverbs qualify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs.
- (2) Connective adverbs qualify and connect two sentences.
- (3) Relative adverbs refer to an antecedent, and are connective.
- (4) Relatives and Demonstratives are correlative.

CASES AND PREPOSITIONS.

41. A noun, besides being the subject of a sentence, serves to complete the sense of other words.

- (1) It may be joined to another noun naming the same thing—

- (a) As an attribute—

- The consul Aulus.**

- (b) As a predicate—

- Aulus was dictator.**

- (2) It may be joined to a transitive verb as direct object—

- You write a letter.**

- (3) It may be joined to a trajective word as indirect object—

- You wrote me a letter.**

- (4) It may qualify another noun naming a different thing, like an adjective—

- Hearts of oak ; Cæsar's funeral.**

- (5) It may qualify a verb or adjective like an adverb—

- Go with speed ; he died in the Senate-House ; learned in the law.**

42. According to the different parts which a noun thus plays in a sentence, it is said to be in a different **Case**.

A case is therefore a *bit of a thought* which fills up a gap in the sense which another word has left incomplete.

43. Cases are marked by **inflexion** when the form of the word is itself changed to indicate change of its force—

The **Lord's** day.

N.B.—In English *nouns* the above is the only case, used to qualify another noun, and it is used in the sense of *possession* only.

Among *pronouns* there is also an *object case*, which is the same for direct and indirect object—

I honour **him** ; give **him** a statue.

44. Cases may also be formed by the use of **Prepositions**, which are words joined to nouns, and showing their relation to other words (*præpositio* = a putting before)—

The army **of the king** (=the king's army) ; a crown **of gold** (=a golden crown) ; faithful and just **to me**.

N.B.—(a) Prepositions are in fact loose case forms put before nouns to supply the want of case inflexions.

Cases supplied by the aid of prepositions are called **syntactical** cases (*syntaxis* = an arranging together) ; cases formed by inflexion are called **inflexional** (*inflexio* = a bending).

(b) Some cases are no longer living—that is, they have broken off from the original noun, and formed adjectives : thus, *his* from *he* ; *mine* from *me* ; and probably *wooden* from *wood*.

45. **Summary**—

- (1) A noun may qualify another noun, a verb, or an adjective.
- (2) **Inflexion** is change of form to indicate change of force.

- (3) **An inflexional case** is an inflexion of a noun showing what it qualifies.
- (4) **Prepositions** are words prefixed to nouns, and showing what they qualify.

CONJUNCTIONS (*conjunctio* = a joining).

46. **Conjunctions** are words which join words, phrases, or sentences, without affecting their several sense—

Once **or** twice; early to bed **and** early to rise; I **neither** praise **nor** blame.

N.B.—Distinguish **conjunctions** which join words from **connective adverbs** which connect actions.

47. Summary of the parts of speech—

- (1) A **noun** names something.
- (2) A **verb** says something.
- (3) A **pronoun** stands for a noun.
- (4) An **adjective** qualifies a noun.
- (5) An **adverb** qualifies a verb, adjective, or other adverb.
- (6) A **preposition** shows the relation of a noun to other words.
- (7) A **conjunction** joins words, phrases, or sentences.

48. Besides these *parts of speech* there are **Interjections** (*interjectio* = a throwing in), which are words thrown into a sentence without affecting its construction, and therefore not parts of speech—

Alack! 'tis he!

A **noun** may be so used, and is then said to be **vocative** (*vocare* = to call).

Ho! Lictors! clear the Forum; help me, **Cassius**;
Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears.

ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

49. To analyse a sentence (α) **Subject must be distinguished from predicate.** (β) **The relation of other words to subject or predicate must be shown.**

50. Words which add to the sense of a sentence but are not essential to it are **enlargements** of subject or predicate.

(Unenlarged)—The bird sat.

(Enlarged)—**Yesterday**, the bird **of night** did sit, **even at noon**, **upon the market-place**, hooting and shrieking.

51. The elements which make up a sentence are to be classified as **nouns, verbs, adjectives, or adverbs.**

As **nouns** if they are the **subject or object** of a verb.

As **verbs** if they **say something.**

As **adjectives** if they **qualify a noun.**

As **adverbs** if they **qualify a verb, adjective, or adverb.**


Noun. To err is human, to forgive divine.

Adjective. An army of a hundred thousand men.

Adverb. He went in haste.

N.B.—(1) Prepositions do not qualify nouns, but show what the nouns qualify. They are taken as part of the noun to which they are prefixed.

N.B.—(2) Conjunctions not qualifying anything do not enter into analysis. Neither do interjections or vocatives.

 See Analysis Table, Appendix A, for the method of distinguishing the different parts of a sentence.

SENTENCES: SIMPLE, COMPLEX, AND COMPOUND.

52. A sentence containing but one subject and one predicate is a **Simple sentence**—

This man's brow like to a title-leaf
Foretells the nature of a tragic volume.

With many a weary step and many a groan,
Up a high hill he heaved a huge round stone.

53. A sentence containing more than one subject and predicate combined together is **Complex** or **Compound**—

(1) **Complex** if the various subjects and predicates cannot stand alone—

The man that once did sell the lion's skin, *while the beast lived*, **was killed in hunting him.**

(2) **Compound** if the various subjects and predicates are joined by conjunctions, but make sense independently—

Horses did neigh, **and** dying men did groan, **and** ghosts did shriek **and** squeal about the streets.

N.B.—When various subjects and predicates are combined so as to form a complex or compound sentence, each subject, with its predicate, forms a **clause**.

54. A clause which makes no complete sense except through a verb not belonging to itself is called a **Subordinate clause**.

55. A complex sentence is one containing a subordinate clause.

56. Subordinate clauses, like words or phrases in a simple sentence, act as nouns, adjectives, or adverbs in the sentence which contains them—

(**Noun**)—*That you have wronged me* doth appear in this.

(**Adjective**)—The man *that hath no music in himself* is fit for treasons.

(**Adverb**)—*When beggars die* there are no comets seen.

N.B.—The clause on which another depends for its sense is called its **Principal clause**.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

57. The clauses of a compound sentence are called **Co-**

ordinate clauses. They are analysed like simple sentences—

Masters teach **and** boys are taught.

N.B.—(1) The subject or predicate alone may be compound—

Jack and Jill went up the hill ; he loved his **brothers and sisters** ; come and see.

N.B.—(2) Clauses joined by conjunctions may themselves be complex sentences—

Thrice is he armed, that hath his quarrel just ;
And he but naked, though locked up in steel,
 Whose conscience with injustice is corrupted.

58. Summary—

- (1) A **Simple Sentence** contains but one subject and predicate making complete sense of themselves.
- (2) A **Subordinate Clause** consists of a subject and predicate not making complete sense unless joined to another verb.
- (3) A **Complex Sentence** is one containing a subordinate clause.
- (4) Subordinate clauses act as nouns, adjectives, or adverbs in the sentence which contains them.
- (5) A **Co-ordinate Clause** consists of a subject and predicate making complete sense alone, but joined to another by a conjunction.
- (6) A **Compound Sentence** is one containing co-ordinate clauses.

COMPARISON.

59. (1) Adjectives of quality, and adverbs derived from them, are **compared** to express **degree**.

(2) There are three **degrees of comparison** : **Positive, Comparative, and Superlative**—

Strong, stronger, strongest.

N.B.—(1) Besides the superlative of comparison there is an **Absolute Superlative**, indicating the existence of a quality in a very high degree—

A **most** eloquent speech.

N.B.—(2) Often with English adjectives, and generally with adverbs, instead of inflecting the word itself, adverbs are used to indicate comparison—

Fortunate, **more** fortunate, **most** fortunate.

Strongly, **more** strongly, **most** strongly.

N.B.—(3) The adverbs which qualify adjectives and adverbs are in fact loose comparison forms, as prepositions are loose case forms, and by means of them degrees of all sorts can be expressed—

Very strong, **too** strong, **less** strong, **pretty** strong.

It will do **vastly** well; this was the **most unkindest** cut of all.

60. Both comparative and superlative degrees require a **complement**, showing that with which comparison is made.

(1) The complement of the comparative is **adverbial**, qualifying the adjective—

He is stronger **than I**—*i.e.*, than **I am strong**.

(2) The complement of the superlative is **adjectival**, qualifying a noun—

The foremost man **of all this world**; the noblest-minded **Romans**; the noblest **of the Romans**.

N.B.—The superlative, indicating that some member of a class excels the rest, requires an **attribute** specifying, or determining, that class.

61. Summary—

(1) Adjectives and adverbs are inflected to denote degree.

(2) There are three degrees of comparison: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

(3) Degree is also expressed by adverbs qualifying adjectives or adverbs.

(4) The complement of the comparative degree is adverbial, of the superlative adjectival.

THE VERB (*Voice*).

62. A verb stating that its subject *does something* is **active**.

A verb stating that its subject *has something done* to it is **passive**—

He **struck** the table ; **was** the table **struck** ?

N.B.—The direct object of a transitive verb in the active is always the subject of the passive.

None but transitive verbs can have a subject in the passive.

FINITE AND INFINITE.

63. A verb making a statement is **Finite**, because a statement must be directed to some particular point (*finitum* = limited)—

You wrong me !

64. When action is expressed but no statement made, the verb is **Infinite** (or not finite)—

To wrong me ; **wronging** me.

65. The parts of the verb infinite are nouns or adjectives—

To err is human, **to forgive** divine ; he seemed **in running** to devour the road.—Nouns.

A hare **running** fast ; a **rolling** stone ; a **tangled** tale.—Adjectives.

N.B.—(1) Such nouns and adjectives are called **verbals**. Like verbs, they may take an object

direct or indirect, and they are qualified by adverbs—

A boy studying **Greek**; a boy studying **hard**.

N.B.—(2) English verbals in **ing** are sometimes nouns and sometimes adjectives. It is most important to distinguish their true nature—

I like **playing** (Noun); boys spend much time **in playing** cricket (Noun); a boy **playing** cricket (Adjective).

MOODS (*modus* = a manner).

66. A **finite verb** may state a thing in three ways—

- (1) As an actual **fact**.
- (2) As some one's **idea**.
- (3) As a **command**.

He **comes** (fact).

He **might come** (idea).

Come here ! (command).

N.B.—The different modes in which a statement may be made constitute the **Moods** of a verb.

67. The **Indicative Mood** states things as facts; the **Subjunctive** as ideas; the **Imperative** commands.

N.B.—Under **statements** are here included **questions**, which are indicative or subjunctive, according as facts or ideas are asked.

Who **brought** the message? who **would be** a king?

TENSES (*tempus* = time).

68. A statement must regard some *time*, **Past**, **Present**, or **Future**. According to the **time** spoken of, the verb making the statement is in a *Past*, *Present*, or *Future Tense*.

N.B.—**The time spoken of** determines the nature of the tense.

We can say—

- (a) **An hour ago** (or a year, or a minute) I wrote, was writing, had written, was about to write.

These are all therefore **past tenses**.

- (b) **At this moment** I write, am writing, have written, am about to write.

These are therefore **present tenses**.

- (c) **An hour hence** I shall write, shall be writing, shall have written, shall be about to write.

These are therefore **future tenses**.

69. Past tenses can be qualified by adverbs of past time, present tenses by adverbs of present time, future tenses by adverbs of coming time.

- N.B.*—(a) The statement of an action, whether past, present, or future, may be—

- (1) **Definite**, indicating its condition at the moment spoken of.
- (2) **Indefinite** or **Aorist**, indicating nothing but the fact of its occurrence.

Yesterday I **was reading** Virgil (*definite*).

Yesterday I **read** the newspaper (*indefinite*).

- (b) A **definite** statement may represent the action as being, at the time spoken of—

- (1) **Complete** or perfect.
- (2) **Incomplete** or imperfect.
- (3) **Prospective** or still to come.

70. The following is a complete division of the tenses of a verb—

PAST.	Definite.	{ Complete, I had written. { Incomplete, I was writing. { Prospective, I was going to write.
	Indefinite	(Aorist), I wrote.
PRESENT.	Definite.	{ Complete, I have written. { Incomplete, I am writing. { Prospective, I am going to write.
	Indefinite	(Aorist), I write.
FUTURE.	Definite.	{ Complete, I shall have written. { Incomplete, I shall be writing. { Prospective, I shall be going to write.
	Indefinite	(Aorist), I shall write.

71. Present and future tenses are **primary**; past tenses are **historic**.

72. (a) The verb infinite making no statement, and therefore speaking of no time, has no true tenses.

(b) It can, however, indicate whether the action it expresses be **complete**, **incomplete**, or **prospective**—

To have written; to be writing; to be about to write.

Having written; writing; going to write.

N.B.—It is to be noted that these are not tenses, but can be used of any time; as,

A year ago he was said to have **finished**, or to be **finishing**, or to be about to **finish**, his book.

73. Difference of tense and mood in verbs is marked sometimes by inflexion, sometimes by the aid of auxiliary verbs; as,

Inflexion.—Tense, I *write*, I *wrote*.

Mood, It *is*, if it *be*.

Auxiliaries.—Tense, I *do* believe, I *did* believe.

Mood, I believe, if I *should* believe.

N.B.—Besides auxiliaries, there are **modal verbs**, expressing not action, but the manner of action

(*modus* = a manner). These require an infinitive as their complement—

I **am wont** to say ; I **am forced** to go.

74. Verbs, Summary—

- (1) A verb is of the same person and number as its subject.
- (2) A verb is in the **active voice** when it states that its subject does something ; it is in the **passive** when it states that its subject has something done to it.
- (3) Those parts of a verb which make a statement are **finite** ; those which make no statement are **infinite**.
- (4) The **indicative mood** states things as facts, the **subjunctive** as ideas, the **imperative** as commands.
- (5) The parts of the verb infinite are nouns or adjectives.
- (6) A verb is in a past, present, or future tense, according to the time of which it speaks.
- (7) Tenses, whether past, present, or future, may be **definite** or **indefinite**, and definite tenses may be **complete**, **incomplete**, or **prospective**.
- (8) **Auxiliary verbs** help to express mood and tense.
- (9) **Modal verbs** take an infinitive complement.

AGREEMENT.

75. Words qualifying nouns belong to them, and therefore partake of the nature of the noun qualified, so far as their own nature permits.

76. Summary of Agreements—

- (1) An adjective agrees with the noun it qualifies in *gender, number, and case*.

- (2) A noun qualifying another noun naming the same thing agrees with it in *case*.
- (3) A finite verb agrees with its subject in *number* and *person*.

INFLEXION.

N.B.—Inflexion is change of a word's form to indicate change of force (43).

77. Summary of Inflexions—

- (1) **Nouns** may be inflected for *number* and *case*.
- (2) **Adjectives** for *gender*, *number*, *case*, *degree*.
- (3) **Verbs** for *voice*, *mood*, *tense*, *person*, *number*.
- (4) **Adverbs** for *degree*.

NOTES.

78. For analysis, note that the pronouns “**it**” and “**there**” are in English often superfluous, and do not appear in analysis—

It pleased you to say this = to say this pleased you.

There lived a man = a man lived.

79. Although in different languages different words are used with the same meaning, yet in all languages the parts of speech are the same, and sentences are constructed on the same principles.

PART II.

LATIN ACCIDENCE.

NOUNS.

Case.

101. A Latin noun has six cases—

NOM.	as	pilă,	<i>a ball.</i>	regină,	<i>a queen.</i>
ACC.	„	pilam,	<i>a ball.</i>	reginam,	<i>a queen.</i>
DAT.	„	pilæ,	<i>to a ball.</i>	reginæ,	<i>to a queen.</i>
GEN.	„	pilæ,	<i>of a ball.</i>	reginæ,	<i>of a queen.</i>
ABL.	„	pilă,	<i>by a ball.</i>	regină,	<i>by a queen.</i>
VOC.	„	pilă,	<i>ball! or O ball!</i>	regină,	<i>queen! or O queen!</i>

N.B.—These six cases represent all the parts which a noun can play in a sentence. Thus, a noun is **Nominative** when the subject of a finite verb—

The *ball* flies; the *queen* reigns: “the *ball*” = **pila**;
“the *queen*” = **regina**.

Accusative when the direct object of a verb—

He throws *a ball*; we love *the queen*; “a *ball*” = **pilam**;
“the *queen*” = **reginam**.

Dative when indirect object—

He gives *the ball* a blow: “the *ball*” = **pilæ**; he writes
a letter *to the queen*: “to the *queen*” = **reginæ**.

Genitive when qualifying another noun naming a different thing—

The queen's army ; the colour *of the ball* : “ *the queen's* ” = **reginæ** ; “ *of the ball* ” = **pilæ**.

Ablative when qualifying a verb—

He plays *with a ball* ; I was struck *by a ball* : “ *with a ball*,” “ *by a ball* ” = **pila**.

N.B.—Any prepositions which make a noun qualify a verb, may in English represent the **ablative**—

I am pale *from* fear ; I could not speak *for* shame.

Vocative when used interjectionally (Int. § 48, note)—

Queen of England, pardon me ; “ *queen* ” = **regina**.

Locative case.—Nouns which name towns and small islands have also a case signifying **at that place**, which, like the ablative, qualifies verbs—

Thus **Roma** = *Rome*, **Romæ** = *at Rome*.

A few other words have locatives, which will be treated under the declensions.

N.B.—(a) In Latin there is no **article**, and therefore, as is seen from the examples above, *pila*, *regina*, may mean **a ball** or **the ball**, **a queen** or **the queen**.

(b) These cases will, in what follows, be arranged thus—

Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative,
Ablative.

(c) The **Accusative, Genitive, Dative, and Ablative**, are called **oblique cases**.

102.

Number.

Latin nouns have **two numbers**, **Singular** and **Plural**, each with its own inflexions. The plural number has the same cases as the singular.

Thus **pila** = *a ball*; **pilæ** = *balls*.

NOM.	pilæ,	<i>balls</i>	(the balls <i>fly</i>).
GEN.	pilarum,	<i>of balls</i>	(<i>the size</i> of the balls).
DAT.	pilis,	<i>to balls</i>	(<i>hurtful</i> to balls).
ACC.	pilas,	<i>balls</i>	(<i>they threw</i> the balls).
VOC.	pilæ,	<i>balls ! or O balls !</i>	(<i>fatal</i> balls !)
ABL.	pilis,	<i>by (&c.) balls</i>	(<i>cricket is played</i> with balls).

103. (1) All nouns are inflected for Number and Case according to one or other of five forms called **Declensions**. These are distinguished from one another by endings of the genitive singular and plural.

(2) In all the declensions, **neuter** nouns have the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular alike, and likewise the nominative, vocative, and accusative plural, and in the plural of neuters these three cases always end in **ă**.

(3) The mark (˘) over a vowel means that it is pronounced short; (–) that it is pronounced long; (˘) or (˘) that it is common—*i.e.*, either long or short.

(4) Cases are so named by grammarians because they were supposed to be the *declension* or falling away of the noun from its original form, the nominative, which therefore could not be called a case. They are really the forms which show the relation of a noun to other words.

104.

FIRST DECLENSION.Nominative in **ā**.Genitive singular in **æ**.,, plural in **arum**.**Pila**, *a ball* (f.).

	Sing.	Plur.
NOM.	pila	pilæ
GEN.	pilæ	pilarum
DAT.	pilæ	pilis
ACC.	pilam	pilas
VOC.	pila	pilæ
ABL.	pilā	pilis

N.B.—Names of towns are sometimes singular, sometimes plural—

Rome = **Roma**, genitive **Romæ**.

Athens = **Athenæ**, ,, **Athenarum**.

The **locative** case singular is like the gen.—

Romæ = *at Rome*.

The **locative** case plural is like the abl.—

Athenis = *at Athens*.

Notes on the First Declension.

104a.—(1) All words of this declension are **feminine** unless their meaning make them **masculine** or **common**—as in **nauta** (*a sailor*), **agricola** (*a husbandman*). None are **neuter**.

Also some names of rivers—**Sequāna** (*the Seine*), **Matrōna** (*the Marne*), and **Hadria** (*the Adriatic Sea*), are masculine.

(2) Irregular cases—

(a) **Dea** (*goddess*) and **filia** (*a daughter*) have dative and ablative plural **deabus**, **filiabus**, to distinguish them from words of the 2d Declension.

N.B.—Also the adjectives **duo** = *two*, and **ambo** = *both*, make **duabus** and **ambabus** in the feminine.

(b) **Familia** (*a family*) when combined with **pater**, **mater**, **filius**, **filia**, makes its genitive **familias**—as **paterfamilias** (*a father of a family*); but it has also the ordinary form—as **pater familiæ**.

(3) **Locative**—

Militiæ = *abroad* (i.e., “*on service*,” from **militia** = *military service*).

(4) In the poets the genitive plural is sometimes in **um** instead of **arum**—as from **cœlicōla** (*a dweller in heaven*), **cœlicōlum** for **cœlicolarum**. **Amphōrum** (from **amphōra**, *a wine-jar*) and **drachmum** (from **drachma**, *a drachma*) are used in prose.

(Cf. 105*a*, 5.)

(5) In the older poets the gen. sing. is sometimes in **ai**—as **aulai** for **aulæ**.

105. SECOND DECLENSION.

Nominative in **er** or **ir**, **us** or **um**.

Genitive singular in **i**.

„ plural in **orum**.

Puer, *a boy* (m.); **magister**, *a master* (m.); **dominus**, *a lord* (m.); **bellum**, *war* (neut.)—

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
NOM.	puer	pueri	magister	magistri
GEN.	pueri	puerorum	magistri	magistorum
DAT.	puero	pueris	magistro	magistris
ACC.	puerum	pueros	magistrum	magistros
VOC.	puer	pueri	magister	magistri
ABL.	puero	pueris.	magistro	magistris
NOM.	dominus	domini	bellum	bella
GEN.	domini	dominorum	belli	bellorum
DAT.	domino	dominis	bello	bellis
ACC.	dominum	dominos	bellum	bella
VOC.	domine	domini	bellum	bella
ABL.	domino	dominis	bello	bellis

Vir, *a man* (m.), and **Deus**, *God* (m.), are thus declined—

	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
NOM.	vir	viri		deus	dei, dii, or di
GEN.	viri	virorum and virûm		dei	deorum and deûm
DAT.	viro	viris		deo	deis, diis, or dis
ACC.	virum	viros		deum	deos
VOC.	vir	viri		deus	dei, dii, or di
ABL.	viro	viris		deo	dels, diis, or dis

N.B.—The locative **singular** is like the genitive ;
the locative **plural** like the ablative, as—

(From **Corinthus**, -i) **Corinthe** = *at Corinth*.

(From **Philippi**, -orum) **Philippis** = *at Philippi*.

Notes on the Second Declension.

105a.—(1) All words ending in **um** are neuter. Also **vulgus**, *a crowd*; **virus**, *poison*; and **pelâgus**, *the sea*. Other words of this declension are mostly **masculine**, a few **feminine**.

(2) The **vocative** in **e** is a decayed form of the nominative in **us**.

Nouns ending in **-ius**, as **filius** (*a son*), **Horatius** (*Horatius*), show the still further decayed form of the vocative singular in **i**, as **fili**, **Horâti**.

In all other Latin nouns the nominative and vocative have the same form.

(3) **Locatives**.—**humi** = *on the ground*.

belli = *abroad (at the war)*.

vesperi = *at evening* (also **vespere**).

domi = *at home*. (See notes on 4th Declension.)

(4) The nouns in **er** which, like **puer**, retain **e** in oblique cases, are **socer**, *a father-in-law* (m.); **gener**, *a son-in-law* (m.); **Liber**, *the god Bacchus*; and **vesper**, *evening*; all others like **magister** omit it.

(5) The **genitive plural** is sometimes in **um** instead of **orum** (as in **virûm**). Thus, from **faber**, *a smith*, **fabrûm** for **fabrorum**. This is most usual in names of weights and measures, as **nummum** for **nummorum**, **sestertium** for **sestertiorum**, &c., and in names of peoples, as **Argivum** for **Argivorum**.

(6) Horace and the older poets make the genitive singular of nouns in **ius** and **ium** in **i** (not **ii**), as **ingeni** for **ingenii**. Ovid and later writers use forms in **ii**.

106. **THIRD DECLENSION.**

Of this declension there are two divisions—

- (1) Words with the same number of syllables in genitive singular as in nominative (**parisyllabics**).
- (2) Words with more in genitive than in nominative (**imparisyllabics**).

I. Parisyllabics.

Endings of nominative various.

Genitive singular in **is**.

„ plural in **ium**.

Civis, *a citizen* (c.); **mare**, *the sea* (neuter).

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
NOM.	civis	cives	mare	maria
GEN.	civis	civium	maris	marium
DAT.	civi	civibus	mari	maribus
ACC.	civem	cives	mare	maria
VOC.	civis	cives	mare	maria
ABL.	cive	civibus	mari	maribus

II. Imparisyllabics.

Endings of nominative various.

Genitive singular in **is**.

„ plural in **um**.

Judex, *a judge* (m.); **leo**, *a lion* (m.); **nomen**, *a name* (neuter).

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
NOM.	judex	judices	leo	leones	nomen	nomina
GEN.	judicis	judicum	leonis	leonum	nominis	nominum
DAT.	judici	judicibus	leoni	leonibus	nomini	nominibus
ACC.	judicem	judices	leonem	leones	nomen	nomina
VOC.	judex	judices	leo	leones	nomen	nomina
ABL.	judice	judicibus	leone	leonibus	nomine	nominibus

N.B.—Locatives in singular and plural like ablatives—

(From **Carthago**, -inis) **Carthagine** = *at Carthage*.

(From **Sardes**, -ium) **Sardibus** = *at Sardis*.

106a. Notes on the Third Declension.

(1) There are no practical rules for gender. Particular words must be observed and remembered.

(2) Locative—

ruri = *in the country*.

(3) Some parisyllabics make genitive plural in **um**, namely—

pater ,	<i>a father</i> , m.	apis ,	<i>a bee</i> , f. (also apium).
mater ,	<i>a mother</i> , f.	panis ,	<i>bread</i> , m.
frater ,	<i>a brother</i> , m.	canis ,	<i>a dog</i> , c.
senex ,	<i>an old man</i> , m.	vates ,	<i>a prophet</i> , c.
juvenis ,	<i>a young man</i> , m.	proles ,	<i>an offspring</i> , f.
	accipiter ,	<i>a hawk</i> , m.	

(4) Some **imparisyllabics** make gen. plur. in **ium**—viz.:

(a) Nouns of one syllable which have two consonants before the **is** of the genitive singular, as—

Dens (*a tooth*), **pons** (*a bridge*), **glans** (*an acorn*).

(b) Neuters in **al** and **ar**, as—

Animal (*an animal*), **calcar** (*a spur*), **lacūnar** (*a ceiling*).

(c) Some individual words. The most important are—

mas (maris),	<i>a male</i> , m.	faux (faucis),	<i>the throat</i> , f.
mus (muris),	<i>a mouse</i> , c.	nix (nivis),	<i>snow</i> , f.
vis ,	<i>force</i> , f.	lis (litis),	<i>a lawsuit</i> , f.

(d) Less important words under this head are—

dos (dotis),	<i>a dowry</i> , f.	glis (gliris),	<i>a dormouse</i> , m.
strix (strigis),	<i>a screech-owl</i> , f.	compes (compēdis),	<i>a fetter</i> , f.
penātes ,	<i>household-gods</i> , m.	optimātes ,	<i>aristocrats</i> , m.

The last two being plural words, no singular forms are in use.

(e) **Vis**, which in sing. means **force** and in plur. **strength**, is thus declined—

	Sing.	Plur.
NOM.	vis	vires
GEN.	(none)	virium
DAT.	(none)	viribus
ACC.	vim	vires
VOC.	(none)	vires
ABL.	vi	viribus

(5) Nouns in **as**, gen. **atis**, have gen. plur. in **um** or **ium**, as—
civitas (*a state*).

Also **palus** (*palūdis*), *a marsh*; **servītus** (*servitutis*), *slavery*.

(6) Some nouns of 3d declension make acc. sing. in **im**.

(a) **Vis** (*force*), acc., **vim**: **tussis** (*a cough*), f.; acc., **tussim**: **sitis** (*thirst*), f.; acc., **sitim**: **cucūmis** (*a cucumber*), f.; acc., **cucumerim**: **amussis** (*a carpenter's rule*), f.; acc., **amussim**.

(b) Names of rivers and towns in **is**, as—**Tibēris**, m.; **Hispālis**, f.: acc., **Tibērim**, **Hispālim**.

(7) Some make their acc. in **em** or **im**, as—

turris (<i>a tower</i>), f.	secūris (<i>an axe</i>), f.
puppis (<i>a ship's stern</i>), f.	navis (<i>a ship</i>), f.
pelvis (<i>a basin</i>), f.	restis (<i>a rope</i>), f.
messis (<i>a harvest</i>), f.	clavis (<i>a key</i>), f.

(8) The ablative singular ends in **i**—

(a) When the noun is a neuter in **al**, **ar**, or **e**.

<i>N.B.</i> —But jubar (<i>a ray</i>), n.,	makes jubāre .
nectar (<i>the drink of the gods</i>), n.,	„ nectāre .
far (<i>grain</i>), n.,	„ farre .

(b) When the acc. sing. is in **im**.

(9) The abl. sing. is in **e** or **i**—

(a) When the acc. is in **em** or **im**.

N.B.—But always **reste** and **securi**.

(b) In **ignis** (*fire*), m.

(10) Nom. plur. of neuters is in **ia** when abl. sing. is in **i**.

(11) The acc. plur. of **parisyllabics** is written **es** or **is**.

N.B.—Both forms are contracted from **eis**.

(12) The following words have no gen. plur. in classical Latin—

cor (<i>the heart</i>), n.	sal (<i>salt</i>), m.
cos (<i>a whetstone</i>), f.	sol (<i>the sun</i>), m.
rus (<i>the country</i>), n.	vas (<i>vadis</i>), (<i>a surety</i>), m.
daps (or dapis), <i>a banquet</i> , f.	

107. **FOURTH DECLENSION.**

Nominative in **ūs** (masc. or fem.) and **u** (neuter).

Genitive singular in **ūs**.

„ plural in **uum**.

Fructus, *a fruit*, m. ; **cornu**, *a horn*.

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
NOM.	fructūs	fructūs	cornu	cornua
GEN.	fructūs	fructuum	cornus	cornuum
DAT.	fructui	fructibus	cornu	cornibus
ACC.	fructum	fructūs	cornu	cornua
VOC.	fructūs	fructūs	cornu	cornua
ABL.	fructu	fructibus	cornu	cornibus

N.B.—The 4th Declension is a contracted variety of the 3d. Thus the gen. sing. was originally in **is**, as **fructuis**; the nom. plur. in **es**, as **fructues**. The contraction accounts for the quantity of the **ūs**.

107a. **Notes on the Fourth Declension.**

(1) Nouns in **us** are generally masculine.

(2) The dat. sing. of neuters always, and sometimes of others, is contracted from **ui** into **u**, as—

cornu for **cornui**; **equitatu** for **equitatuī**.

(3) Some nouns make dat. and abl. plur. in **ubus** instead of **ibus**,—
viz. :

acus (<i>a needle</i>), m.	arcus (<i>a bow</i>), m.
lacus (<i>a lake</i>), m.	quercus (<i>an oak</i>), f.
specu (<i>a cave</i>), n.	artus (<i>a limb</i>), m.
portus (<i>a port</i>), m.	partus (<i>a birth</i>), m.
tribus (<i>a tribe</i>), f.	veru (<i>a spit</i>), n.

(4) **Domus** (*a house*), f., is partly of 2d and partly of 4th declension.

	Sing.		Plur.	
	2d	4th	2d	4th
NOM.	domŭs			domŭs
GEN.		domus	domorum or	domuum
DAT.		domui		domibus
ACC.	domum		domos (rarely	domŭs)
VOC.		domŭs		domŭs
ABL.	domo			domibus

N.B.—**Domi** (*at home*) is the locative sing., not genitive.

108. FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nominative in **es**.

Genitive sing. in **ei**.

„ plur. in **erum**.

Dies, *a day*, m. (f.)

	Sing.	Plur.
NOM.	dies	dies
GEN.	diei	dierum
DAT.	diei	diebus
ACC.	diem	dies
VOC.	dies	dies
ABL.	die	diebus

108a. Notes on the Fifth Declension.

- (1) All nouns of this declension are feminine except **dies**, which in the sing. is *masculine*, used of a fixed day sometimes *feminine*, * and in the plur. always *masculine*.
- (2) The gen., dat., and abl. plural are not used except in the words **res** (*a thing*), **dies** (*a day*), and **species** (*an appearance*).
- (3) **Ei** of the gen. and dat. sing. is sometimes contracted into **e**.

109. Appendix to Nouns.

(1) Greek Nouns—

- (i) *First Declension*. Nominative in **ās**, **ēs**, **ē**.

Æneas, m. ; **Anchises**, m. (proper names) ; **epitome**,
an abridgment, f.

	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
NOM.	Æneās	Anchises	Epitomē
GEN.	Æneæ	Anchisæ	Epitomēs
DAT.	Æneæ	Anchisæ	Epitomæ
ACC.	Æneam or ān	Anchisen	Epitomēn
VOC.	Æneā	Anchisē or ă	Epitomē
ABL.	Æneā	Anchisē or ā	Epitomē

N.B.—(a) The plur. inflexions are those of **pila**.

(b) The terminations **-īdes**, **-ides**, **-iādes**, **-ādes**, mean “*son of*” (compare *Johnson*, *Edwards*, *Mac-Intosh*, *O’Connor*, *Browning*). Words so ending are **patronymics**. They usually form their gen. plur. in **um** instead of **arum** (cf. 1st Declension), as—

Æneādes (*a son of Æneas*), **Atrīdes** (*a son of Atreus*); gen. plur., **Æneadum**, **Atridum**.

Feminine patronymics end in **is**, **es**, or **ias**. They belong to the 3d Declension, as—

Tantālis (*a daughter of Tantalus*), **Nereis** (*a daughter of Nereus*), **Thestias** (*a daughter of Thestius*).

(ii) *Second Declension*—

Greek words in **os** make acc. in **on** or **um**, as—

Delos (*the island Delos*), f. ; acc., **Delon** or **Delum**.

(iii) *Third Declension*—

(a) Greek nouns of this declension make acc. sing. in **em** or **a**, and acc. plur. generally in **ās**, as—

Cratēr (*a mixing bowl*), m. ; acc. sing., **cratērem** or **cratēra** ; acc. plur., **cratērās**.

(b) **Achilles** and **Ulixes** (*Ulysses*) have genitives

Achillei and **Ulixei**, as if of 2d Declension.
All other cases of 3d only.

(c) **Peleus** (and the like) has gen. **Peleos** or **Pelei**,
acc. **Pelea**, voc. **Peleu**.

(2) Indeclinable nouns are—

Fas (*right*), n. ; **nefas** (*wrong*), n. ; **nihil** (*nothing*), n. ;
and nouns belonging to the verb infinite.

(3) *General rules for gender* :—

(i) Names of *male things, peoples, winds, months, mountains, and rivers*, are **masculine**.

N.B.—(a) The names of months are *adjectives* agreeing with **mensis**.

(b) **Styx** and **Lethe**, rivers of the lower world, are **feminine**. Also **Alpes** (*the Alps*), **Ætna**, and **Ida**, names of mountain-ranges.

(c) **Soracte** (*Mount Soracte*) is neuter ; also **Gargāra**, and some others, plural.

(ii) Names of *female things, countries, cities, islands, plants*, are **feminine**.

N.B.—But **rubus** (*a bramble*), **dumus** (*a thorn-bush*), **calāmus** (*a reed*), **carduus** (*a thistle*), and a few others, are **masculine**.

(iii) Indeclinable nouns are **neuter**.

(4) *Heteroclite nouns*. Some nouns are **heteroclite**—that is, of different declension in different parts, as—

Vas, **vasis** (*a vessel*), n. ; plural, **vasa**, **vasorum**.

Jugerum, **jugeri** (*an acre*), n. ; plural, **jugera**, **jugerum**.

Laurus (*a laurel*), f. ; **ficus** (*a fig-tree*), f. ; **pinus** (*a pine-tree*), f., which are of the 2d Declension, have some cases also of the 4th (**pinus** in the abl. has **pinu** only).

Colus (*a distaff*), f., is declined according to both 2d and 4th Declensions.

Requies, -etis (*rest*), f., has also acc. and abl. of the 5th Declension **requiem** and **reque**.

- (5) *Heterogeneous nouns.* Some nouns vary their gender in the plur., as—

Locus (*a place*), m.; plural **loci** (m.), and **loca** (n.)

Also—

jocus	(<i>a jest</i>), m.,	plural joci , m., and joca , n.
frenum	(<i>a bit</i>), n.,	,, freni , m., and frena , n.
rastrum	(<i>a harrow</i>), n.,	,, rastri , m., and rastra , n.
Tartarus	(<i>hell</i>), m.,	,, Tartara (<i>the regions of hell</i>), n.

- (6) Some nouns have no sing., as—

Calendæ (*the calends*), f.; **idus** (*the ides*), f.; **nonæ** (*the nones*), f.; **liberi** (*children*), m.; **maiores** (*ancestors*), m.; **arma** (*arms*), n.

- (7) **Irregular case formation—**

Jupiter or **Juppiter** (*Jupiter*); gen., **Jovis**.

bos (*ox*), c.; gen., **bovis**; gen. plur., **boum**; dat. and abl., **bobus** or **bubus**.

sus (*sow*), f.; gen., **suis**; dat. and abl. plur., **suibus** or **subus**.

senex (*old man*), m.; gen., **senis**.

femur (*thigh*), n.; gen., **femōris** or **femīnis**.

supellex (*furniture*), f.; gen., **supellectilis**.

iter (*journey*), n.; gen., **itineris**.

jecur (*liver*), n.; gen., **jecōris** or **jecinōris**, and **jocinōris**.

- (8) Some words have different meaning in singular and plural, as—

Sing.

Plur.

ædes	(<i>temple</i>), f.,	ædes	(<i>house</i>).
carcer	(<i>prison</i>), m.,	carceres	(<i>starting-post</i>).
castrum	(<i>fort</i>), n.,	castra	(<i>a camp</i>).
comitium	(<i>place of assembly</i>), n.,	comitia	(<i>assembly</i>).
copia	(<i>plenty</i>), f.,	copiæ	(<i>troops</i>).
finis	(<i>end</i>), m.,	fines	(<i>boundaries, territory</i>).
gratia	(<i>favour</i>), f.,	gratiæ	(<i>thanks</i>).
impedimentum	(<i>hindrance</i>), n.,	impedimenta	(<i>baggage</i>).

	Sing.		Plur.
littera	(<i>letter of alphabet</i>), f.,	litteræ	(<i>letter, epistle</i>).
opera	(<i>labour</i>), f.,	operæ	(<i>labourers</i>).
(ops) opis	(<i>help</i>), f.,	opes	(<i>wealth, power</i>).
rostrum	(<i>beak</i>), n.,	rostra	(<i>tribune, for public speaker</i>).

(9) Nouns wanting some of their cases.

N.B.—Nominatives not in use are in brackets. The cases given are those in use.

[faux], f.,	Abl. fauce ,	Plural in full, <i>throat</i> .
fors , f.,	Abl. forte ,	No plural, <i>chance</i> .
[prex], f.,	Dat. preci , {	Acc. precem , }
		Abl. prece , }
		Plural in full, <i>prayer</i> .
[sordes], f.,	Acc. sordem , Abl. sorde ,	Plural in full, <i>dirt</i> .
[spons], f.,	Gen. spontis , Abl. sponte ,	No plural, <i>one's own will</i> .
[verber], n.,	Abl. verbere ,	Plural in full, <i>lash</i> .

(10) Nouns with more than one form—

actum, -i,	} (<i>deed</i>).	penus, -i, m., f.,	} (<i>food-store</i>).
actus, -us,		penum, -i, n.,	
contagium, -ii,	} (<i>contagion</i>).	penus, -us, m., f.,	
contagio, -ōnis,		penus, -ōris, n.,	
elephantus, -i,	} (<i>elephant</i>).	plebs, plebis,	} (<i>common people</i>), f.
elephas, -antis,		plebes, -is,	
juventa, -æ,	} (<i>youth</i>).	plebes, -ei,	
juventus, -tutis,		senecta, -æ,	} (<i>old age</i>).
luxuria, -æ,	} (<i>luxury</i>).	senectus, -tūtis,	
luxuries, -i,		tapes, -ētis, f.,	} (<i>carpet</i>).
materia, -æ,	tapēte, -ētis, n.,		
materies, -ei,	tapētum, -i, n.,		
obsidium, -ii,	} (<i>siege</i>).	tergum, -i,	} (<i>back</i>).
obsidio, -ōnis,		tergus, -ōris,	
paupertas, -tatis,	} (<i>poverty</i>).	vespĕra, -æ, f.,	} (<i>evening</i>).
pauperies, -ei,		vesper, -ĕri, m.,	
pecus, -ōris, n.,	} (<i>cattle</i>).	vesper, -eris, m.,	
pecu (pl. -ua), n.,			

N.B.—**pecus**, -ūdis, f. = *a single beast*.

Adjectives—

hilārus ,	} (<i>cheerful</i>).	exanimus ,	} (<i>lifeless</i>).
hilāris ,		exanimis ,	

There are several nouns of the 4th Declension found only in the abl. sing., such as *jussu*, *injussu*, *natu*, *noctu*, *rogatu*, &c.

(II) **Different kinds of nouns—**

- (i) *Diminutives* indicate that a thing is small of its kind, as—

vulpes, f. (*a fox*); *vulpecula*, f. (*a little fox*).

puer, m. (*a boy*); *puerulus*, m. (*a small boy*).

- (ii) *Collectives* are nouns which in the singular denote a collection of individuals, as—

Multitudo, f. (*a crowd*).

- (iii) *Abstract nouns*. A name given to anything considered apart from the subject in which alone it can exist is an **abstract noun**, as—

Bravery, *hardness*, *politics*.

N.B.—There are *brave men*, but there is no such thing as *bravery*, apart from those who have this quality. So there is no such thing as *politics* apart from the men who do political work.

Latin employs abstract nouns very sparingly, generally using a phrase or a clause instead—

Politics = *res publica* ; *politicians* = *qui in re publica versantur* (men engaged in the state).

110.

ADJECTIVES.

- (I) An **adjective** must be of the same gender, number, and case, as the noun it qualifies.

Besides inflexions for case and number, adjectives have therefore inflexions for gender, as—

Rex bonus (*a good king*) ; *regina bona* (*a good queen*) :
regnum bonum (*a good kingdom*).

Regis boni, *reginæ bonæ*, *regni boni* = *of a good king, queen, kingdom*, &c.

N.B.—In Latin, put the adjective after the noun it qualifies.

(2)—(a) Some adjectives follow the inflexion of the 1st and 2d Declensions of nouns—viz., the 2d for their masc. and neut., and the 1st for their fem.

(b) Some follow the 3d Declension for all genders.

111. Adjectives of 1st and 2d Declension.

Bonus, bona, bonum = good.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	bonus	bonā	bonum	boni	bonæ	bona
GEN.	boni	bonæ	boni	bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
DAT.	bono	bonæ	bono	bonis	bonis	bonis
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonos	bonas	bona
VOC.	bone	bonā	bonum	boni	bonæ	bona
ABL.	bono	bonā	bono	bonis	bonis	bonis

So—

tener, tenera, tenerum (*delicate*), like puer.

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (*beautiful*), like magister.

111a. Notes on Adjectives of the 1st and 2d Declensions.

(1) The adjectives in *er* which, like **tener**, retain the *e*, are—

asper (*rough*). **liber** (*free*).

lacer (*tattered*). **miser** (*wretched*).

prosper (*prosperous*).

And those of more than two syllables ending in **fer** and **ger**, as—

Lucifer (*light-bearing*); **armiger** (*bearing arms*): gen. **Luciferi**, **armigeri**.

(2) Adjectives which have the mas. nom. in **ius** never contract their gen. to **i**.

(3) In the gen. plur. numeral and compound adjectives take **-um** for **-orum**—

denum, from **deni**; **magnanimum**, from **magnanimus**.

112. Adjectives of the 3d Declension.

Adjectives of two terminations have the nom. sing. mas. and fem. alike, but differing from the neuter.

Adjectives of one termination have the nom. sing. alike in all genders.

(1) Adjectives of two terminations—

Tristis (*sad*) ; **melior** (*better*).

	Sing.			Plur.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	tristis	tristis	triste	tristes	tristes	tristia
GEN.	tristis	tristis	tristis	tristium	tristium	tristium
DAT.	tristi	tristi	tristi	tristibus	tristibus	tristibus
ACC.	tristem	tristem	triste	tristes	tristes	tristia
VOC.	tristis	tristis	triste	tristes	tristes	tristia
ABL.	tristi	tristi	tristi	tristibus	tristibus	tristibus

N.B.—Adjectives like **melior** are *Comparatives*.
(Int. § 59.)

	Sing.			Plur.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	melior	melior	melius	meliores	meliores	meliora
GEN.	melioris	melioris	melioris	meliorum	meliorum	meliorum
DAT.	meliori	meliori	meliori	melioribus	melioribus	melioribus
ACC.	meliozem	meliozem	melius	meliores	meliores	meliora
VOC.	melior	melior	melius	meliores	meliores	meliora
ABL.	melioze	melioze	melioze	melioribus	melioribus	melioribus
	or i	or i	or i			

N.B.—Adjectives of the 3d Declension in **er** have another form in **ris**, rarely used in masculine, but always in feminine, as—

Mas. **acer** or **acris** ; fem. **acris** ; neut. **acre** (*sharp*).

September or **-bris**, **-bris** (no neuter); and other names of months. (See above, 109, 3, i.)

(2) Adjectives of one termination—

Felix (*happy*) ; **ingens** (*huge*).

	Sing.			Plur.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	felix	felix	felix	felices	felices	felicia
GEN.	felicis	felicis	felicis	felicium	felicium	felicium
DAT.	felici	felici	felici	felicibus	felicibus	felicibus
ACC.	felicem	felicem	felix	felices	felices	felicia
VOC.	felix	felix	felix	felices	felices	felicia
ABL.	felici	felici	felici	felicibus	felicibus	felicibus

rarely -e rarely -e rarely -e.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	ingens	ingens	ingens	ingentes	ingentes	ingentia
GEN.	ingentis	ingentis	ingentis	ingentium	ingentium	ingentium
DAT.	ingenti	ingenti	ingenti	ingentibus	ingentibus	ingentibus
ACC.	ingentem	ingentem	ingens	ingentes	ingentes	ingentia
VOC.	ingens	ingens	ingens	ingentes	ingentes	ingentia
ABL.	ingente	ingente	ingente	ingentibus	ingentibus	ingentibus
	<i>or i</i>	<i>or i</i>	<i>or i</i>			

112a. Notes on Adjectives of the 3d Declension.

- (1) The abl. sing. is always in **i**, when the nom. neut. is in **e**.
 (2) Participles (verbal adjectives) in **ns** make ablative in **e**, when used properly as participles, **i** when used as adjectives.

N.B.—Thus in the ablative absolute, or when a participle takes a case after it, the ablative can be only in **e**.

- (3) The gen. plur. is in **ium**—
 (a) In all adjectives of two terminations except comparatives.
 (b) In adjectives ending in **x** or in **s** preceded by any consonant but **p**, as—

audax (*bold*); **amans** (*loving*); gen. plur. **audacium**, **amantium**; but **princeps** (*chief*), gen. plur. **principum**.

N.B.—**Cælebs** (*unmarried*) makes **cælibum**.

- (4) The poets sometimes contract gen. plur. of adjectives (and participles) in **ns** from **ium** to **um**.

113. Comparison of Adjectives.

Adjectives of quality are likewise inflected to denote *degree*. There are three *degrees*: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative, as—

durus (*hard*); **durior** (*harder*); **durissimus** (*hardest*).
tristis (*sad*); **tristior** (*sadder*); **tristissimus** (*saddest*).

- (1) The comparative degree is formed from the posi-

tive by adding to the first case which ends in **i**, or for mas. and fem., and **us** for neut., as—

tener (*tender*); gen. **teneri** comp. **tenerior**, **tenerior**, **tenerius**.
pulcher (*beautiful*) ,, **pulchri** ,, **pulchrior**, **pulchrior**, **pulchrius**.

felix (*happy*); dat. **felici** ,, **felicior**, **felicior**, **felicius**.

(2)—(a) The superlative is generally formed by substituting for the comparative termination, **ssimus**, **ssima**, **ssimum**, for mas., fem., and neut. respectively, as—

felici-ssimus, **felici-ssima**, **felici-ssimum** (*happiest*).

(b) Adjectives ending in **er** add **rimus**, **rima**, **rimum** to the nom. mas., as—

tener, sup. **tener-rimus**, -a, -um.
pulcher, ,, **pulcher-rimus**, -a, -um.
acer, ,, **acer-rimus**, -a, -um.

(c) Four adjectives in **ilis**, with their compounds, form their superlative in **illimus**, -a, -um, as—

facilis (*easy*), sup. **facillimus**, -a, -um.
humilis (*lowly*), ,, **humillimus**, -a, -um.
similis (*like*), ,, **simillimus**, -a, -um.
gracilis (*slender*), ,, **gracillimus**, -a, -um.

and the compounds **difficilis** (*difficult*); **dissimilis** (*unlike*).

N.B.—All comparatives are of the 3d Declension, making abl. sing. in **e** or **i**, and gen. plur. in **um**. All superlatives are of the 1st and 2d Declensions.

113a.

Notes on Comparison.

(1) The following adjectives are irregular in comparison :—

bonus (<i>good</i>)	melior	optimus
malus (<i>bad</i>)	pejor	pessimus
magnus (<i>great</i>)	major	maximus
parvus (<i>small</i>)	minor	minimus
multus (<i>much</i>)	plus (a)	plurimus

nequam (<i>b</i>) (<i>wicked</i>)	nequior	nequissimus
dives } (<i>rich</i>)	{ divitior	{ divitissimus
dis }	{ ditior	{ ditissimus
senex (<i>old</i>)	senior	(natu maximus) (<i>c</i>)
juvenis (<i>young</i>)	junior	(natu minimus) (<i>c</i>)
exterus (<i>d</i>) (<i>outside</i>)	exterior	{ extremus
		{ extimus
inferus (<i>e</i>) (<i>low</i>)	inferior	{ infimus
		{ imus
superus (<i>f</i>) (<i>high</i>)	superior	{ supremus
		{ summus
posterus (<i>next</i>) (<i>in time</i>)	posterior	postremus

The following have no adjective form in the positive :—

(citra adverb = <i>on this side</i>)	citerior	citimus
(intra ,, = <i>within</i>)	interior	intimus
(ultra ,, = <i>beyond</i>)	ulterior	ultimus
(præ prep. = <i>before</i>)	prior	primus (<i>first</i>)
(prope adverb = <i>near</i>)	propior	proximus
(potis, used chiefly in com- position = <i>able</i>)	{ potior (<i>better</i>)	{ potissimus (<i>best</i>)
	ocior (<i>quicker</i>)	ocissimus (<i>quickest</i>)
	deterior (<i>worse</i>)	deterrimus (<i>worst</i>)

N.B.—Such forms as **melior** and **optimus** are not formed from the positive, which they are used to compare, but from obsolete adjectives (adjectives no longer used).

Similarly *better* and *worse* are not formed from *good*.

(2) Notes on Irregular Comparison.

(a) **Plus** in sing. is used in neut. only; gen. **pluris**: in plur., nom., &c., **plures**, -a; gen. **plurium**; dat. and abl. **pluribus**.

(b) **Nequam** is indeclinable in the positive—

Homo nequam, hominis nequam, &c.

(c) **Natu maximus** = *greatest in age*, therefore *eldest*.

Natu minimus = *least in age*, ,, *youngest*.

(d) **Exterus** is used in plur. only, as—

Exteri = *foreign people*.

(e) **Inferus**.—The sing. is used only in geographical terms—

Mare Inferum = *the Lower Sea*—i.e., *the Tuscan Sea*.

Plur., **Inferi** = *the gods, etc., below*.

(f) **Superus**.—Sing. : geographical, as—

Mare superum = *the Upper Sea—i.e., the Adriatic*.

Plur. **superi** = *the gods, etc., above*.

(3) The comparative degree has the following meanings :—

(i) **Properly comparative**, as—

Vilior auro (*cheaper than gold*).

(ii) **Possession of quality in considerable degree**, as—

Jam senior (*somewhat aged; older than common*).

(iii) **Possession of quality in excessive degree**, as—

Loquacior (*too talkative, more than should be*).

(4) Some adjectives form diminutives from the comparative, as—

Duriusculus (*a little hard*).

(5) If in the nom. of the positive a vowel precedes the final **us**, the comparison is effected, not by inflexion but by the use of **magis** (*more*) and **maxime** (*most*), as—

Arduus (*steep*); **magis arduus** (*steeper*); **maxime arduus** (*steepest*).

N.B.—**qu** = a single letter, sounded as in queen.

Therefore **antiquus** (*ancient*), **antiquior**, **antiquissimus** and the like, have regular comparison.

114. Comparison of Adverbs.

Adverbs connected with adjectives of quality are also compared. (Int. § 59.)

Their comparative is formed in **ius** like the neut. of the comp. adjective. Their superlative changes the **us** of the superlative into **e**, as—

fortiter (<i>bravely</i>)	from fortis (<i>brave</i>),	comp. fortius	sup. fortissime
acriter (<i>sharply</i>)	,, acer (<i>sharp</i>),	,, acrius	,, accerime
humiliter (<i>lowly</i>)	,, humilis (<i>lowly</i>),	,, humilius	,, humillime

114a. Notes on Comparison of Adverbs.

The following adverbs are not regularly compared :—

parum (<i>too little</i>),	comp. minus	sup. minime
multum (<i>much</i>),	,, plus	,, plurimum
magnopere (<i>greatly</i>),	,, magis	,, maxime
diu (<i>for a long time</i>),	,, diutius	,, diutissime
sæpe (<i>often</i>),	,, sæpius	,, sæpissime

115.

PRONOUNS.

N.B.—(a) Those words alone are true **pronouns** which take the place of nouns.

(b) Pronouns are of the 1st, 2d, or 3d person, according as they represent the person **speaking, spoken to, or spoken of.**

(1) **First person** : **Ego** (*I*); **nos** (*we*).

	Sing.	Plur.
NOM.	ego	nos
GEN.	mei	{ nostrum nostri
DAT.	mihi	nobis
ACC.	me	nos
ABL.	me	nobis

N.B.—No Vocative.

(2) **Second person** : **Tu** (*thou*); **vos** (*you*).

	Sing.	Plur.
NOM.	tu	vos
GEN.	tui	{ vestrum vestri
DAT.	tibi	vobis
ACC.	te	vos
VOC.	tu	vos
ABL.	te	vobis

(3) **Third person.**

N.B.—The thing **spoken of** is represented by a noun. But when the action of the subject affects **itself**, instead of repeating the *noun* a **Reflexive pronoun** is used. This is the only substantive pronoun of the 3d *person*, and it can by its nature have none but oblique cases.

Se (*himself, herself, itself*).

	Sing.	Plur.
GEN.	sui	sui
DAT.	sibi	sibi
ACC.	se or sese	se or sese (<i>themselves</i>)
ABL.	se or sese	se or sese

115a. Notes on Pronouns.

- (1) The acc. of **ego** and **tu** is used in exclamations like a voc., as—
Me miserum (*wretched me!*); **O te stolidum** (*O thou blockhead!*)
N.B.—With the acc. the address is **indirect**, with the **voc.** **direct**.
- (2) Sometimes, especially in poetry, **mihi** is contracted into **mi**.

116. DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

Possessives showing **whose** a thing is.

N.B.—As being formed from the pronouns, these are called *Possessive Pronouns*.

(a) 1st Person—

Meus, mea, meum (*my* or *mine*). Declined like **bonus**.

Noster, nostra, nostrum (*our* or *ours*). Declined like **pulcher**.

(b) 2d Person—

Tuus, tua, tuum (*thy* or *thine*). Declined like **bonus**.

Vester, vestra, vestrum (*your* or *yours*). Declined like **pulcher**.

(c) 3d Person—

Suus, sua, suum (*his own, her own, its own, their own*). Declined like **bonus**.

116a. Notes on Possessives.

- (1) The voc. of **meus** is **mi**—
Mi fili! (*my son!*), *m.*
N.B.—But also **meus**—
Sanguis meus! (*my offspring!*), *Virgil*.
- (2) The **possessives** are the genitives of the **Pronouns** turned into **adjectives**.

They are used instead of the **genitive proper** in the sense of **possession**, as—

Liber meus (*my book*), instead of *the book of me*.

(3) From **noster** and **vester** are formed—

nostras, gen. **nostrātis** = *of our country*.

vestras ,, **vestrātis** = *of your country*.

117. Adjectives specifying which is the thing spoken of. Demonstratives—

Hic (*this* near me).

Iste (*that* near you).

Ille (*that one* at a distance).

Is (*he*).

Ipse (*he himself*).

	Sing.			Plur.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	hic	hæc	hoc	hi	hæ	hæc
GEN.	hujus	hujus	hujus	horum	harum	horum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	his	his	his
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hos	has	hæc
ABL.	hoc	hac	hoc	his	his	his
NOM.	iste	ista	istud	isti	istæ	ista
GEN.	istius	istius	istius	istorum	istarum	istorum
DAT.	isti	isti	isti	istis	istis	istis
ACC.	istum	istam	istud	istos	istas	ista
ABL.	isto	ista	isto	istis	istis	istis

Ille, illa, illud, like **iste**.

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum like **iste**, except *nom.* and *acc. sing. neut.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	is	ea	id	{ ei ii	eæ	ea
GEN.	ejus	ejus	ejus	eorum	earum	eorum
DAT.	ei	ei	ei	{ eis iis	eis	iis
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eos	eas	ea
ABL.	eo	ea	eo	{ eis iis	eis	eis

Idem (*is + dem*), *the same*, is thus declined:—

	Sing.			Plur.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	Idem	eādem	īdem	{ eīdem (iīdem)	eādem	eādem
GEN.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eorundem	earundem	eorundem
DAT.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{ eīdem īdem	eīdem	eīdem
ACC.	eundem	eandem	īdem	eosdem	easdem	eādem
ABL.	eodem	eādem	eodem	{ eīdem īdem	eīdem	eīdem

117a. Notes on Demonstratives.

- (1) The first syllable of the masc. **Idem** is *long*; of the neut. **Idem**, *short*.
- (2) **Istic** (*iste + ce*) and **illic** (*ille + ce*) are used chiefly in the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *abl.* sing., and are declined like **hic**, but the neuter *nom.* and *acc.* is often **istuc**.

The gen. (**istiusce**) and dat. (**istice**) are seldom used.

N.B.—**Ce** is a demonstrative particle. Cf. οὗτοςί, *celui-ci*.

- (3) From an old form **ollus** = *ille*, are found in Virgil dat. sing. and *nom. plur.* **olli**.

118. RELATIVES.

Qui, quæ, quod, *who* or *which*.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	qui	quæ	quod	qui	quæ	quæ
GEN.	cujus	cujus	cujus	quorum	quarum	quorum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	{ quibus queis quis	quibus queis quis	quibus queis quis
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quæ
ABL.	quo	qua	quo	{ quibus queis quis	quibus queis quis	quibus queis quis

118a. Notes on Relatives.

- (1) Other relatives are **quicumque** (or **quicunque**) and **quisquis**, both meaning *whoever*.

Quicumque, quæcumque, quodcumque, is declined like **qui**.

Gen. **cujuscumque**, &c. ; acc. **quemcumque**, &c.

Quisquis has no fem., and is scarcely used except in the forms **quisquis, quidquid** (or **quicquid**), and **quoquo**.

N.B.—**Quisquis** and **quicumque** being *relatives*, not *interrogatives*, do not introduce *indirect clauses* (257).

- (2) There is an old form of the abl. **qui, quo, or qua**, which is used as an *adverb*, and appears likewise in composition in such words as **quin** (**qui-ne**, *by which not*).

119. INTERROGATIVES.

Quis ? or qui ? quæ ? quid ? and quod ? (*who ? which ? what ?*) is declined like the relative **qui**.

N.B.—But *dat. and abl. plur. quibus* only.

119a. Notes on Interrogatives.

- (1) **Qui** and **quod** are used when the noun qualified is expressed ; **quis** (commonly) and **quid** (always) when the *interrogative* stands alone as if it were a noun, as—

Quis es ?	Homo.	Qui homo ?
<i>Who</i> art thou ?	A man.	<i>What</i> man ?

- (2) In its compounds **quisnam** or **quinam**, and **ecquis** or **ecqui** (fem. **ecquæ** or **ecqua**), the interrogative is declined in the simple form.

N.B.—The distinction between the forms **quis** and **qui, quod** and **quid**, holds also in these compounds.

120. INDEFINITES.

	Sing.		Plur.	
(1) quis }	quā	{ quid quod	qui quæ	{ qua quæ
qui }				
aliquis	aliqua	{ aliquid aliquod	aliqui aliquæ	aliqua

Declined in other cases sing. and plur. as the relative.

And the compounds **quispiam, quique, quivis, quilibet**,

quidam, quisquam (gen. **cujuspiam, cujusque**, &c.)

N.B.—**Quisquam** has no fem. and no plur.

(2) **Ullus, ulla, ullum** ; gen. **ullius** ; dat. **ulli**,—declined like **ille**.

120a.

Notes on Indefinites.

(1) As with the interrogatives, **quis** and **quid** are used as *nouns*, **qui** and **quod** as *adjectives*.

The same distinction holds in the compounds.

(2) **Aliqui** is sometimes written for **aliquis** in the nom. sing.

(3) The use of the various indefinites must be carefully observed.

(a) **Quisquam** and **ullus** regard *any single individual independently of others* = *any solitary one*—

Estne **quisquam** omnium mortalium? (*Is there any single mortal?*)

Procerior est quam amicorum **quisquam**. (*He is taller than any of his friends.*)

Quamdiu erit **quisquam** qui te defendat. (*As long as you have one champion.*)

Negat se **ullis** legibus obtemperaturum. (*He says he will obey no law.*)

Precibus si flecteris **ullis**. (*If there be any prayer that moves thee.*)

N.B.—(1) Therefore **quisquam** and **ullus** are used in *negative* sentences, where all are excluded.

N.B.—(2) **Quisquam** is generally used alone, **ullus** with a noun.

(b) **Quivis** and **quilibet** regard individuals collectively as *equally sharing some property* = *any one taken at will* (as a sample, all)—

Quivis perspicere possit. (*Any one could see.*)

Quavis ratione rem feceris. (*Make money anyhow you choose.*)

Quælibet minima res. (*Any trifling circumstance.*)

Procerior eo est amicorum **quivis**. (*Any of his friends is taller than he.*)

N.B.—(1) Therefore **quivis** or **quilibet** is used when all are included.

N.B.—(2) Qui **vis** = whom *you will*.

Qui **libet** = whom *it pleases (you to take)*.

(c) **Quisque** regards all individuals of a body, but *each independently of the others* = each, one by one; each and all—

Quod **cuique** obtigit id **quisque** teneat. (*Let each hold to that which has fallen to his lot.*)

Tuorum **quisque** necessariorum. (*Each and all of your acquaintance.*)

Optimus **quisque**. (*Every good man—every man according to his goodness.*)

(d) **Quidam** regards a particular individual, but does not specify him = a certain one—

Quidam rhetor. (*A certain rhetorician.*)

(e) **Aliquis** regards no particular individual, but one vague and undefined—

Aliquis philosophorum. (*Some one of the philosophers.*)

(f) **Quis** and **quispiam** are quite indefinite, and stand for a *possibly existing* person or thing, or one *quite unknown* to the speaker.

Si **quis** dixerit. (*If any one says.*)

Ne **quis** audeat. (*Let no one dare.*)

Quæret **quispiam**. (*Somebody will ask.*)

Legio **quæpiam**. (*Some legion or other.*)

N.B.—**Quis** is used chiefly with **num**, **ne**, **si**, **nisi**, and *relative adverbs*.

121. The following is a complete list of the adjectives of all kinds which, like **ille**, make gen. sing. in **ius**, and dat. in **i**—

unus, *one*.

alter, *the other* (of two).

alius, { *another* (of more than
two).

ullus, *any one*.

nullus, *no one*.

uter? { (interrog.) *which?* (of
two).

uterque, *each* (of two).

neuter, *neither*.

solus, *alone*.

totus, *whole*.

122.

CORRELATIVES.

- (1) A relative corresponds to a demonstrative which points out that to which the relative refers—

Fecit **is** **cui** prodest. (*He to whose advantage it is has done it.*)

Idem est **qui** semper fecit. (*He is the same as he ever was.*)

N.B.—**Is** and **idem** are the true correlatives of **qui**.

- (2) Besides the demonstratives and relatives already mentioned (determinative adjectives), there are others which refer not to the thing itself but to its *quality* or *quantity*. These are in like manner correlated. Their *relative* is in each case also used interrogatively.

Such are—

DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.	INTERROGATIVE.
talīs (<i>such</i>).	qualis (<i>as</i>).	qualis ? (<i>of what sort?</i>)
tantus (<i>so great</i>).	quantus (<i>as</i>).	quantus ? (<i>how great?</i>)
tot (<i>so many</i>).	quot (<i>as</i>).	quot ? (<i>how many?</i>)

N.B.—**Tot** and **quot** are indeclinable adjectives.

- (3) In like manner there are demonstrative and relative *adverbs* which are in like manner correlated ; and the relatives are for the most part used also as interrogatives, as—

DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.	INTERROGATIVE.
ibi (<i>there</i>).	ubi (<i>where</i>).	ubi ? (<i>where?</i>)
eo (<i>thither</i>).	quo (<i>whither</i>).	quo ? (<i>whither?</i>)
inde (<i>thence</i>).	unde (<i>whence</i>).	unde ? (<i>whence?</i>)
ea (<i>by that way</i>).	qua (<i>by which way</i>).	qua ? (<i>by which way?</i>)
tum (<i>then</i>).	quum (<i>when</i>).	(Not used interrog.)
	quando (<i>when</i>).	quando ? (<i>when?</i>)

DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.	INTERROGATIVE.
toties (<i>so often</i>).	quoties (<i>as</i>).	quoties ? (<i>how often?</i>)
tam (<i>so or as</i>).	quam (<i>as</i>).	quam ? (<i>how?</i>)
sic }	ut (<i>as</i>).	ut ? (<i>how?</i>)
ita }		

N.B.—**Tam...quam** qualify adjectives.

Ita (or **sic**)...**ut** qualify verbs, as—

Tam breves **quam** repentinæ. (*As short as sudden.*)

Ita se gessit **ut** nocens haberetur. (*He so bore himself as to be held guilty.*)

- (4) Demonstrative and relative adverbs are old case-forms of demonstrative and relative adjectives.

123.

NUMERALS.

Cardinal numerals answer the question **quot ?** (*how many?*)

Ordinal numerals answer the question **quotus ?** (*which in order?*)

Distributive numerals answer the question **quoteni ?** (*how many together?*)

Multiplicative numerals answer the question **quotuplex ?** (*how many fold?*)

Proportional numerals answer the question **quotuplus ?** (*how many times more?*)

Numeral adverbs answer the question **quoties ?** (*how often?*)

ARABIC SIGNS.	ROMAN SIGNS.	CARDINAL; answering the question Quot? <i>how many?</i> (Adjectives.)	ORDINAL; answering the question Quotus? <i>which in numerical order?</i> (All declinable adjectives.)	DISTRIBUTIVE; answering the question Quoteni? <i>how many each?</i> (All declinable adjectives.)	NUMERAL ADVERBS; answering the question Quoties? <i>how many times?</i>
I	I	unus, <i>a, um</i>	primus (prior, <i>first of two</i>)	singuli	semel.
2	II	duo, <i>a, o</i>	secundus <i>or</i> alter	bini	bis.
3	III	tres, <i>tria</i>	tertius	terni <i>or</i> trini	ter.
4	IIII <i>or</i> IV	quattuor	quartus	quaterni	quater.
5	V	quinque	quintus	quini	quinquies.
6	VI	sex	sextus	seni	sexies.
7	VII	septem	septimus	septeni	septies.
8	VIII	octo	octavus	octoni	octies.
9	VIIII <i>or</i> IX	novem	nonus	noveni	novies.
10	X	decem	decimus	deni	decies.
11	XI	undecim	undecimus	undeni	undecies.
12	XII	duodecim	duodecimus	duodeni	duodecies.
13	XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus	terni deni	tredecies.
14	XIIII <i>or</i> XIV	quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quaterni deni	quattuordecies.
15	XV	quindecim	quintus decimus	quini deni	quindecies.
16	XVI	sedecim	sextus decimus	seni deni	sedecies.
17	XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus	septeni deni	septiesdecies.
18	XVIII <i>or</i> XIX	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	duodevicensi	duodevicies.
19	XVIII <i>or</i> XIX	undeviginti	undevicesimus	undevicensi	undevicies.
20	XX	viginti (indeclinable)	vicesimus	vicensi	vicies.
21	XXI	viginti unus	vicesimus primus	vicensi singuli	semel et vices.
28	XXVIII	unus et viginti	unus et vicesimus	duodetricensi	duodetrices.
29	XXIX	duodetriginta	duodetricesimus	undetricensi	undetrices.
30	XXX	undetriginta	undetricesimus	tricensi	trices.
		triginta	trigesimus		

40	XXXX or XL	quadraginta	quadragessimus	quadrageni	quadragies.
50	L	quinquaginta	quinquagesimus	quinquageni	quinquagies.
60	LX	sexaginta	sexagesimus	sexageni	sexagies.
70	LXX	septuaginta	septuagesimus	septuageni	septuagies.
80	LXXX or XXX	octoginta	octogesimus	octogeni	octogies.
90	LXXX or XC	nonaginta	nonagesimus	nonageni	nonagies.
99	XCIX or IC	undecentum	undecentesimus	undecenteni	undecenties.
100	C	centum	centesimus	centeni	centies.
101	CI	centum et unus	centesimus primus	centeni singuli	centies semel.
200	CC	ducenti, <i>a, a</i>	ducentesimus	ducenti	ducenties.
300	CCC	trecenti, <i>a, a</i>	trecentesimus	trecenti	trecenties.
400	CCCC or CD	quadringenti, <i>a, a</i>	quadringentesimus	quadringeni	quadringenties.
500	D or I ^o	quingenti, <i>a, a</i>	quingentesimus	quingeni	quingenties.
600	DC	sexcenti, <i>a, a</i>	sexcentesimus	sexcenti	sexcenties.
700	DCC	septingenti, <i>a, a</i>	septingentesimus	septingeni	septingenties.
800	DCCC	octingenti, <i>a, a</i>	octingentesimus	octingeni	octingenties.
900	DCCCC	nongenti, <i>a, a</i>	nongentesimus	nongeni	nongenties.
1000	M or cI ^o	mille	millesimus	singula millia	millies.
2000	MM or cI ^o cI ^o	duo millia	bismillesimus	bina millia	bis millies.
5000	VM or I ^o o	quinque millia	quinquies millesimus	quina millia	quinquies millies.
10,000	XM or ccI ^o o	decem millia	decies millesimus	dena millia	decies millies.
50,000	LM or I ^o oo	quinquaginta millia	quinquagies millesimus	quinquagena millia	quinquagies millies.
100,000	cccI ^o oo	centum millia	centies millesimus	centena millia	centies millies.
500,000	I ^o ooo	quingenta millia	quingenties millesimus	quingena millia	quingenties millies.
1,000,000	ccccI ^o ooo	decies centum millia	decies centies millesimus	decies centena millia	decies centies millies.

MULTIPLICATIVE, answering the question Quotuplex? *how many fold?* are: simplex, duplex, triplex, quadruplex, quincuplex, &c. So septemplex, *sevenfold*; decemplex, *tenfold*; centuplex, *a hundredfold*.
PROPORTIONAL, answering the question Quotuplus? *how many times more?* are: simplex, duplus, triplus, quadruplus, &c.
N.B. — *Sexcenti* is used of an indefinitely large number, as we say *a hundred, a thousand*.

125. Declension of Numerals.

(1) *Cardinal numerals*—

Unus, -a, -um, declined like **ille**: gen. **unius**; dat. **uni**, &c.

N.B.—**Unus** is used in the plur. with nouns which have a plur. form and sing. meaning, as—

Unæ litteræ. (*One letter*) (epistle).

Una castra. (*One camp.*)

	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	duo	duæ	duo	tres	tres	tria
GEN.	duorum	duarum	duorum	trium	trium	trium
DAT.	duobus	duabus	duobus	tribus	tribus	tribus
ACC.	duos	duas	duo	tres	tres	tria
ABL.	duobus	duabus	duobus	tribus	tribus	tribus

N.B.—**Ambo**, -æ, -o, *both*, is declined like **duo**; acc. mas. **ambos** or **ambo**.

The other cardinal numerals from **quatuor** to **centum** are indeclinable.

Ducenti, -æ, -a, &c., declined like the plur. of **bonus**.

Mille in sing. is indeclinable, and is used as an adjective or substantive.

Millia (**millium**, **millibus**) in the plur. is declined, and is used as a noun only—

Mille passus (*one thousand paces—a mile*).

Mille hominum (*a thousand men*).

Duo millia passuum (*two thousands of paces*). .

(2) *Ordinals and Distributive Numerals.*

These are declined like **bonus**, the distributives being plural only.

N.B.—But **prior**, the first of two, being a comparative, is of the 3d Declension.

Alter, **altera**, **alterum** (*the other of two*) has gen. **alterius**, dat. **alteri**.

126. Notes on Numerals.

- (1) The *distributives* are often used as *cardinal* numbers with plural nouns, to denote several of the things whereof the plural noun names one, thus—

Litteræ = *an epistle*.

Binæ litteræ = *two epistles*.

(**Duæ litteræ** = *two letters of the alphabet*.)

- (2) **Fractions** are expressed by the ordinals with **pars** (sometimes understood), as—

$\frac{1}{3}$ = **tertia pars** ; $\frac{3}{7}$ = **tres septimæ**.

N.B.—But $\frac{2}{3}$ and $\frac{3}{4}$ = **duæ partes** and **tres partes**.

- (3) Fractions are likewise expressed by means of the divisions of the **as**, originally a *pound of bronze*, which was divided into **12 uncia** or *ounces*, thus—

$\frac{1}{12}$	= uncia	gen. unciæ	(fem.)
$\frac{2}{12}$ (or $\frac{1}{6}$)	= sextans	„ sextantis	(mas.)
$\frac{3}{12}$ (or $\frac{1}{4}$)	= quadrans	„ quadrantis	(„)
$\frac{4}{12}$ (or $\frac{1}{3}$)	= triens	„ trientis	(„)
$\frac{5}{12}$	= quincunx	„ quincuncis	(„)
$\frac{6}{12}$ (or $\frac{1}{2}$)	= semis	„ semissis	(„) sometimes indeclinable
$\frac{7}{12}$	= septunx	„ septuncis	(„)
$\frac{8}{12}$ (or $\frac{2}{3}$)	= bes	„ bessis	(„) (= binæ partes assis)
$\frac{9}{12}$ (or $\frac{3}{4}$)	= dodrans	„ dodrantis	(„) (= de-quadrans = $1 - \frac{1}{4}$)
$\frac{10}{12}$ (or $\frac{5}{6}$)	= dextans	„ dextantis	(„) (= de-sextans)
$\frac{11}{12}$	= deunx	„ deuncis	(„) (= de-uncia)
$\frac{12}{12}$ (or 1)	= as	„ assis	(„)

Heres ex asse = *heir to the whole estate*.

Heres ex quincunce = *heir to $\frac{5}{12}$ of it*.

N.B.—These fractions are likewise used of measures of land, weight, capacity, &c.

VERBS.

127.

Verb Inflexions.

(1) **Person Inflexions.**—A verb says something about a subject which may be of 1st, 2d, or 3d person, singular or plural.

In English the subject requires always to be expressed—except in commands.

In Latin *finite* verbs, **person-endings** (originally pronouns) are added, as **case-endings** are to nouns—

I love, thou lovest, he loves, we love, you love, they love.

Thus—

am-o, } (ama-o), }	ama-s, ama-t, ama-mus, ama-tis, ama-nt.
-----------------------	---

N.B.—(1) The pronouns suffixed were probably—

Singular.	Plural.
1. -mi (cf. <i>me</i>).	-mas (cf. ἡμεῖς).
2. -si (σὺ = <i>tu</i>).	-tas (<i>tu</i> + <i>s</i>).
3. -to (cf. <i>τὸ</i>).	-nti.

N.B.—(2) **M**, the most perishable of the consonants, has disappeared from many 1st persons singular.

It remains in only two Presents Indicative—

Sum (*I am*); **inquam** (*I say*).

N.B.—(3) **Sum** = Greek εἰμί = English **am** (the only trace in English of a verb in -mi).

(2) **Tense Inflexions.**—To denote change of *time* in Latin, **tense-endings** are used, where English generally uses auxiliary verbs, as—

I love = amo (ama-o).
I was loving = ama-bam.
I have loved = ama-vi.
I shall love = ama-bo.

Each of which tenses has its person-endings, as—

Ama-ba-**m**, ama-ba-**s**, ama-ba-**t**,
ama-ba-**mus**, ama-ba-**tis**, ama-ba-**nt**.

- (3) **Mood Inflexions**.—Change in the mode of statement is indicated by **mood-endings**, as—

Indicative, am-**o** ; subjunctive, am-**em** ; imperative, am-**a**.

Each having its tense and person endings.

N.B.—(1) The special characteristic of the subjunctive is a long vowel preceding the termination, as—

sīmus, doceātis.

Compare Greek Subjunctives.

N.B.—(2) It is quite misleading to assign any particular English as the meaning of the subjunctive.

No English form is always subjunctive, and a multitude of forms may be so, but may equally be indicative or imperative.

The only principle is that whereas the indicative states something as a *fact*, the subjunctive states it as an *idea*.

N.B.—(3) The so-called **tenses** of the subjunctive do not mark *time* in the same way as those of the indicative. Their force will appear later.

- (4) **Voice Inflexions**.—The **passive voice** (which states that its subject *undergoes* the action performed by the subject of the active) has its own inflexions for person, number, tense, and mood. As a rule passive inflexions are formed by suffixing to the active the reflexive **se** (generally changed to **r**), as—

Active, amo ; passive [amo-se—amo-re] amor.

N.B.—(1) This **se** or **r** is the characteristic of the

passive voice, though the precise formation is often not evident.

N.B.—(2) The 2d person plural in **-mini** (as *ama-mini*) is exceptional.

It was originally a past participle with an auxiliary.

Compare Greek τετυμμένοι εἰσίν.

N.B.—(3) **S** between two vowels is generally in Latin changed into **r**—

Eram, ero (from **sum**).

128. Periphrastic Tenses.

Latin not having tense-forms to mark all distinctions of time, supplies the want by the auxiliary **sum**, used with participles. Tenses thus supplied are **periphrastic** (or roundabout)—

Amaturus sum = *I am about to love.*

Amaturus eram = *I was about to love.*

N.B.—The future participle active and the gerundive form periphrastic tenses.

129. Mood and Tense Significations.

(1) **Indicative Mood.** This mood states **facts**—

Primary	{	present,	amo,	{ <i>I love,</i>	pres. indef.
		perfect,	amavi,	{ <i>I am loving,</i>	" incomp.
	{	future, {	simple, amabo,	<i>I have loved,</i>	" comp.
			perfect, amavero,	{ <i>I shall love,</i>	fut. indef.
Historic	{	future, {	perfect, amavero,	{ <i>I shall be loving,</i>	" incomp.
				<i>I shall have loved,</i>	" comp.
	{	preterite,	amavi,	<i>I loved,</i>	past indef.
		imperfect,	amabam,	<i>I was loving,</i>	" incomp.
	{	pluperfect,	amaveram,	<i>I had loved,</i>	" comp.

N.B.—(1) The **perfect** and **preterite**, though always the same in form, are distinct tenses.

N.B.—(2) The **present** expresses the *present of the act*, the **perfect** the *present of the state*, as—

(Present) **Nosco** = I *learn*.

(Perfect) **Novi** = (I have learnt), I *know*.

(2) **Subjunctive Mood.** This mood states **ideas**.

It is used—

(i) **Independently.** (ii) **Subordinately.**

(i) Used **independently** (in a principal clause), it has two main significations—

(a) **Optative**, representing the action **not as real**, but as **desired** or **granted**—

Amemus (*let us love*)—exhortation.

Sis felix (*may you be happy*)—wish.

Sit ita (*grant it is so*)—concession.

N.B.—This is often used instead of the imperative, especially in prohibition, as—

Ne feceris (*don't do it*).

(b) **Potential**, denoting the action **not as real** but as **possible**, as—

Platonem laudaveris (*you will probably praise Plato*).

Crederes victos (*you would think them conquered*).

When used independently, the tenses are thus employed—

(a) **Optative use**—

Present and **perfect**, to express what is more or less *probable*.

Imperfect, what is highly *improbable*.

Pluperfect, what is *no longer possible*, as—

Utinam me **amet** (*may he love me*).

Utinam me **amaret** (*would that he would love me*).

Utinam me **amavisset** (*would that he had loved me*).

(b) **Potential use—**

Present and **perfect**, for what is assumed as possibly true.

Imperfect, for what is assumed as not true.

Pluperfect, for what has already happened otherwise than as supposed, as—

Non **reprehenderim** (*I am not inclined to find fault*).

Troja nunc **staret** (*Troja might still be standing—but is not*).

Crederes victos (*you would—wrongly—think them conquered—if you saw them*).

Venissent (*they would have come—in some circumstances which did not occur*).

- (ii) More commonly the subjunctive is used in **subordination** to another verb (*i.e.*, in a subordinate clause).

In such constructions its tenses are thus used—

- (a) After **primary** tenses of the indicative, or after the **imperative** (which in all its forms is built on the present indicative), **primary** tenses of the subjunctive.

Present subjunctive, to express an action *accompanying*, or *closely following*, that of the principal verb, or of the verb on which the subjunctive depends.

Perfect, to express an action *preceding* that of the principal.

Primary future, one *succeeding*.

- (b) After **historic** tenses of the indicative, **historic** of subjunctive.

Imperfect, to express action *accompanying*.

Pluperfect, one *preceding*.

Historic future, one *succeeding*.

[See examples, 253.]

N.B.—(1) “The right rendering of this mood is not learnt from tables, but from exemplification, reading, and practice.”—KENNEDY.

N.B.—(2) The names **subjunctive** (*subjunctivus* = subjoined) and **conjunctive** (*conjunctivus* = conjoined) are misleading, as it can be **subordinate** or **co-ordinate**.

It is better called by some the “**thought mood**.”

- (3) **Imperative Mood**.—This mood has but one tense, the present, which is also used with a *quasi* future meaning.

[See 134*a*, 3.]

	Sing.		Plur.
2d person	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Love} \\ \text{Warn} \\ \text{Read} \\ \text{Hear} \end{array} \right\} \text{thou.}$		Love, &c., ye.
3d person	Let him (love, &c.)		Let them love, &c.

THE VERB INFINITIVE.

Verbal Nouns.

(4) Infinitive Mood.

	Active.		Passive.
Present	= to (love, warn, teach, hear).		= to be (loved, &c.)
Perfect	= to have (loved, &c.)		= to have been (loved, &c.)
Future	= to be about to (love, &c.)		= to be about to be (loved, &c.)

N.B.—There is no true future infin. passive, which is supplied by periphrastic phrases, as—

Lectum iri (see 133*a*, 6, and 241*a*, 2), and **Fore** ut legatur (or legeretur), (to be about to be, that it should be read).

(5) **Gerund.**

NOM.	Loving, &c.
GEN.	Of loving, &c.
DAT.	To loving, &c.
ACC.	Loving, &c.
ABL.	By, &c., loving, &c.

N.B.—(1) The **infinitive** is used as the nom. of the gerund when the *act* is meant. The nom. gerund is used only in expression of duty and obligation, as—

Legere utile est (*reading is useful*).

Legendum est mihi (*I must read*).

N.B.—(2) The accusative gerund is used—

(a) As subject of an infinitive (to express duty or obligation), as—

Dico **legendum** esse (*I say we must read*).

(b) With a preposition, as—

Paratus **ad legendum** (*prepared for reading*).

In other cases the infinitive is used for the accusative, as—

Amat **legere** (*he loves reading*).

(6) **Supines.** (Nouns of 4th Declension)—

1st (Acc.) = *loving, warning, teaching, hearing*.

2d (Abl.) = *in the loving, &c.*

Verbal Adjectives.(7) **Participles**—

	Active.	Passive.
Present,	Loving, &c.	(None.)
Perfect,	(None.)	<i>Having been</i> loved, &c.
Future,	<i>About to</i> love, &c.	(None.)
Gerundive,	(None.)	<i>To be</i> loved, &c.

N.B.—(1) Particularly note the distinction between the nouns and the adjectives of the verb infinitive, which are frequently expressed in English by the same words, thus—

Reading is useful = **Legere** est utile.

A man *reading* = **Legens**.

To be loved is pleasant = **Amari** gratum est.

A man *to be loved* = Vir **amandus**.

N.B.—(2) English verbals in *ing* are sometimes nouns, sometimes adjectives. Their true nature in each particular case must be carefully observed.

130. Conjugations.

Verbs as a rule form their various parts according to one or other of four types, called the **Four Conjugations**.

These are distinguished chiefly by the termination of the *Present Infinitive Active*—

Infinitive in	{	āre = 1st Conjugation (amāre).
		ēre = 2d „ (monēre).
		ĕre = 3d „ (legĕre).
		īre = 4th „ (audīre).

N.B.—Verbs not forming their parts according to one or other of these systems are **irregular**. Verbs which are not used in all their tenses are **defective**.

131. Principal Parts.

The principal parts of a verb are those from which others are immediately formed. They are—

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	1ST SUPINE.
amo	amāre	amavi	amatum
moneo	monēre	monui	monitum
lego	legĕre	legi	lectum
audio	audīre	audivi	auditum

132. The Auxiliary Verb *sum, esse, fui*.

N.B.—Also used as a **copulative** and as a **substantive** verb (= *to exist*).

Verb Finite.

Primary Tenses.

		INDIC. MOOD.	SUBJ. MOOD.	IMPER. MOOD.
Present	Sing.	1. <i>sum</i>	<i>sim</i>	
		2. <i>es</i>	<i>sis</i>	<i>es</i> or <i>esto</i>
		3. <i>est</i>	<i>sit</i>	<i>esto</i>
	Plur.	1. <i>sumus</i>	<i>simus</i>	
		2. <i>estis</i>	<i>sitis</i>	<i>este</i> or <i>estote</i>
		3. <i>sunt</i>	<i>sint</i>	<i>sunto</i>
Perfect	Sing.	1. <i>fui</i>	<i>fuërim</i>	
		2. <i>fuisti</i>	<i>fueris</i>	
		3. <i>fuit</i>	<i>fuerit</i>	
	Plur.	1. <i>fuīmus</i>	<i>fuerīmus</i>	
		2. <i>fuistis</i>	<i>fuerītis</i>	
		3. <i>fuērunt</i> or <i>fuēre</i>	<i>fuerint</i>	

		INDIC. MOOD.	SUBJ. MOOD.	
Future	Simple	Sing. 1. <i>ero</i>	Sing. 1. <i>futurus</i> (-a, -um)	<i>sim</i>
		2. <i>eris</i>	2. „ „	<i>sis</i>
		3. <i>erit</i>	3. „ „	<i>sit</i>
		Plur. 1. <i>erimus</i>		
		2. <i>eritis</i>		
		3. <i>erunt</i>		
	Perfect	Sing. 1. <i>fuëro</i>	Plur. 1. <i>futuri</i> (-æ, -a)	<i>simus</i>
		2. <i>fueris</i>	2. „ „	<i>sitis</i>
		3. <i>fuerit</i>	3. „ „	<i>sint</i>
		Plur. 1. <i>fuerīmus</i>		
		2. <i>fuerītis</i>		
		3. <i>fuerint</i>		

Historical Tenses.

	INDIC. MOOD.	SUBJ. MOOD.
Imperfect	Sing. 1. eram	essem or forem
	2. eras	esses or fores
	3. erat	esset or foret
	Plur. 1. erāmus	essēmus or foremus
	2. erātis	essētis or foretis
	3. erant	essent or forent

Preterite—Sing. 1, fui, &c. (as the Perfect).

	INDIC. MOOD.	SUBJ. MOOD.
Pluperfect	Sing. 1. fueram	fuissem
	2. fueras	fuisses
	3. fuerat	fuisset
	Plur. 1. fuerāmus	fuissēmus
	2. fuerātis	fuissētis
	3. fuerant	fuissent

Future	Sing. 1. futurus (-a, -um)	essem
	2. „ „	esses
	3. „ „	esset
	Plur. 1. futuri (-æ, -a)	essēmus
	2. „ „	essētis
	3. „ „	essent

Verb Infinite.**Verbal Nouns.**

Infinitive Mood	Present, esse
	Perfect, fuisse
	Future, fore or futurus (-a, -um) esse

Verbal Adjectives.

Participles	Present (wanting)
	Future, futurus, -a, -um

132a. Note on the verb *sum*.

As will be seen, the parts of this verb are formed from two different roots, which appear respectively in *sum*, *es*, &c., and in *fui*. (Compare Greek *εἶμι* and *φύω*, also English *am* and *was*.)

REGULAR VERBS.

133. I. FIRST CONJUGATION: Amo, amāre, amāvi, amātum (*I love*).

Verb Finite.

Primary Tenses.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
amo	amem	amor	amer
amas	ames	{ amāris	{ amēris
amat	amet	{ amāre	{ amēre
		amātur	amētur
Plur.	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.
amāmus	amēmus	amāmur	amēmur
amātis	amētis	amamini	amēmīni
amant	ament	amantur	amentur
IMPER.		IMPER.	
Sing. { ama		Sing. { amare	
amato		amator	
amato		amator	
Plur. { amate		Plur. amamini	
amatote			
amanto		amantor	

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
amāvi	amavērim	amatus sum	amatus sim
		(-a, -um)	(-a, -um)
amavisti	amaveris	,, es	,, sis
amavit	amaverit	,, est	,, sit
Plur.	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.
amavimus	amaverīmus	amati sumus	amati simus
		(-æ, -a)	(-æ, -a)
amavistis	amaverītis	,, estis	,, sitis
{ amavērunt	amaverint	,, sunt	,, sint
amavēre			

Primary Tenses—*continued.*

Active Voice.

Passive Voice.

		INDIC.	SUBJ.			INDIC.
		Sing.				Sing.
Future	Simple	amābo		amabor		
		amabis		{ amabēris		
		amabit		{ amabere		
				amabitur		
		Plur.	Sing.	Plur.		
	Perfect	amabīmus	amaturus sim	amabīmur		
			(-a, -um)			
		amabītis	„ sis	amabimini		
		amabunt	„ sit	amabuntur		
	Perfect	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.		
		amavero	amaturi simus	amatus ero (or fuero)		
			(-æ, -a)	(-a, -um)		
		amaveris	„ sitis	„ eris (or fueris)		
		amaverit	„ sint	„ erit (or fuerit)		
		Plur.		Plur.		
		amaverīmus		amati erimus (or fuerīmus)		
				(-æ, -a)		
		amaverītis		„ eritis (or fuerītis)		
		amaverint		„ erunt (or fuerint)		

Historical Tenses.

Preterite	{	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
		Sing.		Sing.	
		amavi	...	amatus sum	{ ...
		(&c., as Perf.)		(-a, -um) (&c., as Perf.)	
Imperfect	{	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
		amābam	amārem	amābar	amarer
		amabas	amares	{ amabāris	{ amarēris
	amabat	amaret	{ amabāre	{ amarēre	
			amabatur	amaretur	
	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.	
	amabāmus	amarēmus	amabamur	amaremur	
	amabātis	amarētis	amabamini	amaremini	
		amabant	amarent	amabantur	amarentur

Historical Tenses—*continued*.

Active Voice.

Passive Voice.

Pluperfect	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
	amavĕram	amavissem	amatus eram	amatus essem
			(-a, -um)	(-a, -um)
	amaveras	amavisses	„ eras	„ esses
	amaverat	amavisset	„ erat	„ esset
	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.
	amaverāmus	amavissēmus	amati eramus	amati essemus
			(-æ, -a)	(-æ, -a)
	amaverātis	amavissētis	„ eratis	„ essetis
	amaverant	amavissent	„ erant	„ essent
Future ...		amaturus essem
		(-a, -um)		
		„ esses		
		&c.		

Verb Infinite.

Active Voice.

Passive Voice.

Verbal Nouns.

Infinitive	PRES. amare	amari
	PERF. amavisse	amatus (-a, -um) esse
	FUT. amaturus esse	(amatum iri)
	(-a, -um)	fore ut { ametur } }
		{ amaretur }
Gerund	Sing.	
	NOM. amandum	
	GEN. amandi	
	DAT. amando	
	ACC. amandum	
	ABL. amando	
Supines I. amatum	II. amatu	

Verb Infinite—*continued*.

Verbal Adjectives.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
Pres.	amans (Gen. amantis)	(None)	
Perf.	(None)	amatus, -a, -um	(Gen. amati, -æ, -i)
Fut.	amaturus, -a, -um	(None)	
	(Gen. amaturi, -æ, -i)		
Gerundive	(None)	amandus, -a, -um	(Gen. amandi, -æ, -i)

II. SECOND CONJUGATION: Moneo, monēre, mon-
ui, monitum (*I warn*).

Verb Finite.

Primary Tenses.

Active Voice.				Passive Voice.			
Present	INDIC.	SUBJ.		INDIC.	SUBJ.		
	Sing.	Sing.		Sing.	Sing.		
	moneo	moneam		moneor	monear		
	monēs	moneas		{ monēris	{ moneāris		
				{ monēre	{ moneāre		
	monet	moneat		monētur	moneatur		
	Plur.	Plur.		Plur.	Plur.		
	monēmus	moneāmus		monēmur	moneāmur		
	monētis	moneātis		monēmini	moneāmini		
	monent	moneant		monentur	moneantur		
	IMPER.			IMPER.			
Sing.	{ monē		Sing.	{ monēre			
	{ monēto			{ monētor			
	moneto			monetor			
Plur.	{ monēte		Plur.	monemini			
	{ monetote						
	monento			monentor			

Primary Tenses—*continued.*

Active Voice.

Passive Voice.

Perfect	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
	monui	monuerim	monitus sum	monitus sim
			(-a, -um)	(-a, -um)
	monuisti	monueris	„ es	„ sis
	monuit	monuerit	„ est	„ sit
Perfect	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.
	monuimus	monuerīmus	moniti sumus	moniti simus
			(-æ, -a)	(-æ, -a)
	monuistis	monuerītis	„ estis	„ sitis
	monuērunt	monuerint	„ sunt	„ sint
	monuēre			

Active Voice.

Passive Voice.

Future	Simple	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.
		Sing.		Sing.
		monēbo		monēbor
		monēbis		{ monebēris
		monēbit		{ monebere
				monebitur
	Plur.	Sing.		Plur.
	monebīmus	moniturus sim		monebīmur
		(-a, -um)		
	monebītis	„ sis		monebimini
	monēbunt	„ sit		monebuntur
	Perfect	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.
		monuero	monituri simus	monitus ero or fuero
			(-æ, -a)	(-a, -um)
		monueris	„ sitis	„ eris or fueris
		monuerit	„ sint	„ erit or fuerit
		Plur.		Plur.
	monuerīmus			moniti erimus or fuerīmus
				(-æ, -a)
	monuerītis			„ eritis or fuerītis
	monuerint			„ erunt or fuerint

Historical Tenses.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	INDIC.		SUBJ.
Preterite	Sing.	Sing.	
	monui (&c., as Perf.)	monitus sum (-a, -um) (&c., as Perf.)	
Imperfect	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
	monēbam	monērem	monērer
	monēbas	moneres	monerēris
	monebat	moneret	monerēre
	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.
	monebāmus monebātis monēbant	monerēmus monerētis monerent	monerētur moneremur moneremini monerentur
Pluperfect	INDIC.	SUBJ.	SUBJ.
	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
	monueram	monuissē	monitus essem
	monueras	monuisses	monitus essem
	monuerat	monuisset	monitus essem
	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.
	monuerāmus monuerātis monuerant	monuissēmus monuissetis monuissent	moniti essemus moniti essetis moniti essent
Future	...	moniturus (-a, -um) essem ,, esses &c.	...

Verb Infinite.

Verbal Nouns.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
Infinitive.	PRES. monēre	monēri	
	PERF. monuisse	monitus (-a, -um) esse	
	FUT. moniturus esse (-a, -um)	monitum iri	
		fore ut { moneatur } { moneretur }	

Verb Infinitive—*continued*.

Active Voice.

Passive Voice.

Sing.

Gerund	{	NOM. monendum
		GEN. monendi
		DAT. monendo
		ACC. monendum
		ABL. monendo

Supines I. monitum II. monitu

Verbal Adjectives.

PRES. monens

(Gen. monentis)

PERF. (None)

FUT. moniturus, -a, -um

(Gen. -i, -æ, -i)

Gerundive (None)

(None)

monitus, -a, -um

(Gen. -i, -æ, -i)

(None)

monendus, -a, -um

(Gen. -i, -æ, -i)

III. THIRD CONJUGATION: Lēgo, legēre, lēgi, lectum (*I read*).

Verb Finite.

Primary Tenses.

Active Voice.

Passive Voice.

Present	{	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
		Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
		lēgo	legam	legor	legar
		legis	legas	{ legēris	{ legaris
		legit	legat	{ legere	{ legare
		Plur.	Plur.	legitur	legatur
		legimus	legāmus	Plur.	Plur.
		legitis	legātis	legimur	legāmur
		legunt	legant	legimini	legāmini
				leguntur	legantur
			IMPER.		IMPER.
		Sing.	{ legē	Sing.	{ legere
			{ legito		{ legitor
			legito		legitor
Plur.	{ legite	Plur.	legimini		
	{ legitote				
	legunto		leguntor		

Primary Tenses—*continued*.

Active Voice.

Passive Voice.

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
	lēgi	legĕrim	lectus sum	lectus sim
			(-a, -um)	(-a, -um)
	legisti	legeris	„ es	„ sis
	legit	legerit	„ est	„ sit
Perfect.	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.
	legimus	legerimus	lecti sumus	lecti simus
			(-æ, -a)	(-æ, -a)
	legistis	legeritis	„ estis	„ sitis
	{ legērunt	legerint	„ sunt	„ sint
	{ legēre			

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.
	Sing.		Sing.
	legam		legar
	leges		{ legĕris
	leget		{ legēre
	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
	legēmus	lecturus sim	legēmur
		(-a, -um)	
	legētis	„ sis	legēmini
	legent	„ sit	legentur
Future	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.
	legĕro	lecturi simus	lectus ero (or fuero)
		(-æ, -a)	(-a, -um)
	legeris	„ sitis	„ eris (or fueris)
	legerit	„ sint	„ erit (or fuerit)
	Plur.		Plur.
	legerimus		lecti erimus (or fuerimus)
			(-æ, -a)
	legeritis		„ eritis (or fueritis)
	legerint		„ erunt (or fuerint)

Historical Tenses.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	INDIC.		SUBJ.
	Sing.		Sing.
Preterite	legi (&c., as Perf.)	...	lectus sum (-a, -um) (&c., as Perf.)
			...
Imperfect	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
	legēbam	legērem	legēbar
	legēbas	legeres	legēbaris
			legebare
	legebat	legeret	legebatur
	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.
	legebāmus	legerēmus	legebāmur
	legerētis	legebāmini	
	legēbant	legērent	legerentur
Pluperfect	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.
	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
	legēram	legissem	lectus eram (-a, -um)
	legeras	legisses	„ eras
	legerat	legisset	„ erat
	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.
	legerāmus	legissēmus	lecti eramus (-æ, -a)
	legeratis	„ eratis	
	legerant	„ erant	
	Sing.		
Future	...	amaturus (-a, -um) essem &c.	...

Verb Infinitive.

Verbal Nouns.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
Infinitive {	PRES. legere	legi	
	PERF. legisse	lectus (-a, -um) esse	
	FUT. lecturus (-a, -um) esse	{ lectum iri	{ fore ut { legatur } }
		{	

Verb Infinite—*continued*.

Active Voice.

Passive Voice.

Sing.

Gerund	{	NOM. legendum
		GEN. legendi
		DAT. legendo
		ACC. legendum
		ABL. legendo

Supines I. lectum II. lectu

Verbal Adjectives.

Pres. legens (Gen. legentis)

Perf. (None)

Fut. lecturus, -a, -um

(Gen. -i, -æ, -i)

Gerundive (None)

(None)

lectus, -a, -um

(Gen. -i, -æ, -i)

(None)

legendus, -a, -um

(Gen. -i, -æ, -i)

IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION: Audio, audire, audīvi, auditum (*I hear*).

Verb Finite.

Primary Tenses.

Active Voice.

Passive Voice.

Present	{	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
		Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
		audio	audiam	audior	audiar
		audis	audias	{ audīris	{ audiāris
				{ audire	{ audiare
		audit	audiat	audītur	audiātur
		Plur.	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.
		audīmus	audiāmus	audīmur	audiāmur
		audītis	audiatis	audimini	audiamini
		audiunt	audiant	audiuntur	audiantur
		IMPER.		IMPER.	
		Sing. { audī		Sing. { audīre	
		audīto		audītor	
		audīto		audītor	
		Plur. { audīte		Plur. audimini	
		auditote			
		audiunto		audiuntor	

Primary Tenses—*continued.*

Active Voice.				Passive Voice.			
Perfect	INDIC.	SUBJ.		INDIC.	SUBJ.		
	Sing.	Sing.		Sing.	Sing.		
	audivi	audiverim		audītus sum	audītus sim		
				(-a, -um)	(-a, -um)		
	audivisti	audiveris		,, es	,, sis		
	audivit	audiverit		,, est	,, sit		
	Plur.	Plur.		Plur.	Plur.		
	audivimus	audiverīmus		auditi sumus	auditi simus		
			(-æ, -a)	(-æ, -a)			
	audivistis	audiverītis		,, estis	,, sitis		
	audivērunt	audiverint		,, sunt	,, sint		
	audivēre						

Active Voice.				Passive Voice.			
Future	Simple	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.			
		Sing.		Sing.			
		audiam		audiar			
		audies		audiēris			
		audiet		audiere			
		Plur.		audiētur			
	audiēmus	Sing.	Plur.				
		auditurus sim	audiemur				
		(-a, -um)					
	audiētis	,, sis	audiemini				
	audient	,, sit	audientur				
	Perfect	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.			
		audivero	audituri simus	auditus ero			
			(-æ, -a)	(-a, -um)			
		audiveris	,, sitis	,, eris			
audiverit		,, sint	,, erit				
Plur.			Plur.				
audiverīmus		auditi erimus					
		(-æ, -a)					
audiverītis		,, eritis					
audiverint		,, erunt					

Historical Tenses—

Active Voice.

Passive Voice.

	Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Preterite	Sing.		Sing.	
	audivi (&c., as Perf.)	...	audītus sum (-a, -um) (&c., as Perf.)	...
Imperfect	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
	audiēbam	audīrem	audiēbar	audīrer
	audiebas	audires	{ audiebaris	{ audirēris
			{ audiebare	{ audirēre
	audiebat	audiret	audiebatur	audiretur
	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.
Pluperfect	audiebamus	audirēmus	audiebamur	audiremur
	audiebatis	audiretis	audiebamini	audiremini
	audiebant	audirent	audiebantur	audirentur
	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
	audivēram	audivissem	auditus eram (-a, -um)	auditus essem (-a, -um)
Future	audiveras	audivisses	,, eras	,, esses
	audiverat	audivisset	,, erat	,, esset
	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.
	audiverāmus	audivissēmus	auditi eramus (-æ, -a)	auditi essemus (-æ, -a)
	audiveratis	audivissetis	,, eratis	,, essetis
	audiverant	audivissent	,, erant	,, essent
Future	...	Sing.
		auditurus (-a, -um) essem, &c.		

Verb Infinite.

Verbal Nouns.

Active Voice.

Infinitive { PRES. audire
PERF. audivisse
FUT. auditurus esse
(-a, -um)

Gerund { Sing.
NOM. audiendum
GEN. audiendi
DAT. audiendo
ACC. audiendum
ABL. audiendo

Supines. I. auditum II. auditu

Passive Voice.

audiri
auditus (-a, -um) esse
{ auditum iri
fore ut { audiatur }
 { audiretur } }

Verbal Adjectives.

PRES. audiens
(Gen. audientis)

PERF. (None)

FUT. auditurus, -a, -um
(Gen. -i, -æ, -i)

Gerundive (None)

(None)

auditus, -a, -um
(Gen. -i, -æ, -i)
(None)

audiendus, -a, -um
(Gen. -i, -æ, -i)

Notes on the Conjugations.

133a. (1) In active perfects in **avi** and **evi**, and in tenses formed therefrom, **vi** and **ve** are often omitted before **r** or **s**, as—

Amavisse = **amasse**, **delevērunt** = **delerunt**.

N.B.—But such contractions as **amavere** to **amare**, **delevere** to **delere**, which would resemble the infinitive, are not admitted.

For the same reason the forms of the 2d pers. sing. pres. indic. pass. in **re** are seldom used.

- (2) In active perfects in **ivi**, and tenses formed therefrom, **v** is often omitted before **e** or **i**, as—

Audiveram = **audieram**; **audivissem** = **audiissem**.

N.B.—In prose **-iiss** is always contracted to **-iss**, as **audissem**.

- (3) **Short form of imperative.**—**Dico** (*I say*), **duco** (*I lead*), **facio** (*I make*), and **fero** (*I bear*), have imperatives **dic**, **duc**, **fac**, **fer**.

- (4) The **imperative forms** active in **-to** and passive in **-tor** are more emphatic, and being used in laws and decrees, are sometimes called **future imperatives**.

N.B.—These are the only imperatives used, in prose, for prohibitions with **ne**, as—

Defunctus intra urbem ne sepelitor. (*Let not a corpse be buried in the city.*)

Nocturna sacrificia ne sunt. (*Let there be no sacrifices by night.*)

They are so used in laws, and when legal style is imitated.

The subjunctive is usually employed for prohibitions, as—

Ne feceris (*don't do it*).

The poets occasionally use the imperative with **ne**, as—

Ne sævi (*be not furious*).

- (5) The **present participle**, when used properly as a **participle**, has abl. sing. in **e**; when as an **adjective**, in **i**.
- (6) The so-called **future infinitive passive** (as **lectum iri**) is made up of the supine in **um** with the pres. inf. pass. of **ire** (*to go*), used impersonally [241a, 2].
- (7) **Periphrastic Tenses.**—Besides the tenses given in the table, the future and gerundive participles can be conjugated with *all* the parts of **sum**, as—

Amaturus sum = *I am about to love* (= **amabo**).

Amandus ero = *I shall be worthy of love*.

Irregular forms—

- (8) An old form of the present infinitive passive in **-ier** is used by some poets, as **amarier** for **amari**.
- (9) Other old forms occasionally used are—
- faxo**, for fut. indic. of **facio**.
ausim, for fut. subj. of **audeo**.
faxis, **ausis**, for fut. indic. or subj.

Also the following, which are probably used as follows—

Levasso for **levavero** (levo, -are); **prohibesso** for **prohibuero** (prohibeo); **capso** for **cepero** (capio); **axo** for **egero** (ago); **occisit** for **occiderit** (occīdo); **taxis** for **tetigeris** (tango), &c.

(10) **Verbal Adjectives.**—Besides the ordinary participles, various verbal adjectives, called *participials*, are formed from certain verbs.

(a) An active present **participial** in **bundus** or **cundus** (rarely transitive), as—

Cunctabundus = *lingering*; **moribundus** = *dying*; **ira-cundus** = *wrathful*.

(b) Passive in **bilis** or **ilis**, signifying *possibility* or *fitness*, as—

Amabilis = *lovable*; **docilis** = *teachable*.

(c) Active in **ax** (never transitive), signifying disposition, as—

Loquax = *talkative*; **ferax** = *fertile*.

(d) Active in **idus** (never transitive), intensifying the notion of the verb, as—

Rapidus = *devouring* or *hurrying*; **cupidus** = *eagerly desirous*.

134. Different kinds of Verbs—

(1) **Deponent** verbs have *passive form* and *active meaning*, as—

vescor, vesci, I satiate myself.

Compare **pascor, pasci, pastus sum, I feed myself**, the transitive form of which (**pasco**) is in use = *feed* or *pasture a flock*.

N.B.—Deponents were so called as *laying aside* their active form and passive meaning. (**Depono** = *I lay aside*.) The name is very incorrect. Deponents are rather the survivors of the older middle form of verbs with reflexive force, which form afterwards came to be used in passive sense; thus—

loquor = *I set myself talking*.

- (a) Though passive in form, deponents have participles of the active as well as of the passive formation, as—

loquens = *speaking*; **locuturus**, *about to speak*.

- (b) The participles of passive form (*i.e.*, the perfect participle and the gerundive) have frequently a passive force, though the rest of the verb is used actively, as—

loquendus = *to be spoken of*.

- (2) **Semi-deponents** (or neuter-passives) are, in form, partly active and partly passive. These are—

2d Conjugation	{	Audeo, audēre, ausus sum = <i>I dare</i> .
		Gaudeo, gaudēre, gavisus sum = <i>I rejoice</i> .
		Soleo, solēre, solitus sum = <i>I am wont</i> .
3d Conjugation		Fido, fidēre, fisis sum = <i>I trust</i> .

N.B.—**Audeo**, in the future subjunctive, has the form **ausim** (133*a*, 9).

- (3) **Frequentatives** in **-to** or **-so** express repeated or intense action. They are always of the 1st Conjugation, as—

dicto (from **dico**) = *I say often*.

N.B.—There are also frequentatives of frequentatives, as—

dictito = *I keep on saying* (from **dicto**).

- (4) **Inceptives** in **-sco** express the beginning of action, as—

puerasco = *I become a boy* (from **puer**, *m.*)

pallesco = *I grow pale* (from **palleo**).

N.B.—There is no inceptive form except in the present and tenses derived from it.

- (5) **Desideratives** in **-urio** express *desire* (always of 4th Conjugation), as **esurio** (*I desire to eat*, from **edo**, supine **esum**).
- (6) **Diminutives** (1st Conjugation), as **ustulo**, **-are**, *to singe*, from **uro** (supine **ustum**), *to burn*.
- (7) **Imitative verbs** (1st Conjugation), as **Græcisso** (or **Græcizo**) **-are**, *to follow Greek fashion*.
- (8) **Quasi passive**, with active form and passive meaning, are—

Exulo, **-are** = *I am banished*.

Fio, **fieri** = *I am made*.

Liceo, **-ēre** = *I am put to auction*.

Veneo, **-ire** = *I am for sale* (*I am sold*).

N.B.—**Ven-eo** = *I go for sale*, as **ven-do** = *I give for sale*.

- (9) **Deponent participles** belonging to active verbs are—

Juratus (**juro**, **-are**) = *having sworn*.

Cenatus (**ceno**, **-are**) = *having dined*.

Pransus (**prandeo**, **-ēre**) = *having breakfasted*.

135.

DEFECTIVES.

- (a) **Cœpi** (*I have begun*) has only the perfect (and preterite), the supine, and some parts formed from them—

Cœpi, **cœperim**, **cœpero**, **cœperam**, **cœpisse**,
cœptum, **cœptus**.

N.B.—The classical present is **incipio**.

- (b) **Odi** (*I hate*) has parts formed from the perfect, and the participles perfect and future. (No preterite)—

Odi, **oderim**, **odero**, **oderam**, **odissem**, **odisse**, **osus**
(*hating*), **osurus**.

- (c) **Memini** (*I remember*) has parts formed from the

136. Impersonals. (See Syntax, 239-242.)

The following are the chief impersonals:—

- (a) **Fulgurat** = *it lightens*; **ningit** = *it snows*; **pluit** = *it rains*; **grandinat** = *it hails*; **tonat** = *it thunders*; **lucescit** = *it dawns*; **vesperascit** = *it grows late*.
- (b) (2d Conjugation)—**Oportet** = *it behoves*; **decet** = *it seems*; **dedecet** = *it misbeseems*; **piget** = *it irks*; **pudet** = *it shames*; **pænitet** = *it repents*; **tædet** = *it disgusts*; **miseret** = *it moves pity*; **libet** (and **lubet**) = *it pleases*; **licet** = *it is lawful*; **liquet** = *it is clear*; **attinet** = *it relates*; **pertinet** = *it belongs*.
- (c) (Other conjugations)—**Accidit** = *it happens*; **contingit** = *it befalls*; **evēnit** = *it turns out*; **convēnit** = *it suits*; **expēdit** = *it is expedient*; **delectat** = *it charms*; **juvat** = *it delights*; **constat** = *it is certain*; **rēfert** = *it concerns*; **interest** = *it concerns*.

N.B.—The tenses and moods of impersonals are regularly formed according to their conjugation, as—

Oportet, oporteat, oportuit, oportebit, oporteret, &c.

137. Irregular Verbs.

- (a) **Possum, posse, potui** = *I am able* (potis sum).

Indicative—

Primary	{	PRES.	possum, potes, potest, possūmus, potestis, possunt
		PERF.	potui, potuisti, potuit, potuīmus, potuistis, potuērunt or potuēre
		FUT. SIMPLE	potero, poteris, poterit, poterimus, poteritis, poterint
		,, PERF.	potuero, potueris, potuerit, potuerīmus, potueritis, potuerint
Historic	{	IMPERF.	poteram, poteras, poterat, poteramus, poteratis, poterant
		PRET. (as Perf.)	potui, &c.
		PLUPERF.	potueram, potueras, potuerat, potueramus, potueratis, potuerant

Subjunctive—

Primary	{	PRES.	possim, possis, possit, possimus, possitis, possint
		PERF.	potuerim, potueris, potuerit, potuerimus, potueritis, potuerint
Historic	{	IMPERF.	possem, posses, posset, possemus, possetis, possent
		PLUPERF.	potuissem, potuisses, potuisset, potuissemus, potuissetis, potuissent

Infinitive—

PRES.	posse. PERF. potuisse
-------	-----------------------

Participle—

PRES.	potens, used only as an adjective = <i>powerful</i>
-------	---

(b) (1) **Volo, velle, volui** = *I am willing*; (2) **Nolo** (non volo), **nolle, nolui** = *I am unwilling*; (3) **Malo** (magis volo) = *I prefer*, form their tenses regularly, except the present—

Indicative—

Primary	{	PRES.	{ volo, vis, vult, volumus, vultis, volunt nolo, non vis, non vult, nolumus, non vultis, nolunt malo, mavis, mavult, malumus, mavultis, malunt		
			PERF.	1. volui	2. nolui 3. malui
			FUT. SIMP.	1. volam	2. nolam 3. malam
			FUT. PERF.	1. voluero	2. noluoero 3. maluero
Historic	{	IMPERF.	1. volebam	2. nolebam	3. malebam
		PRET.	1. volui	2. nolui	3. malui
		PLUPERF.	1. volueram	2. nolueram	3. malueram

Subjunctive—

Primary	{	PRES.	{ 1. velim, velis, velit, velimus, velitis, velint 2. nolim, nolis, nolit, nolimus, nolitis, nolint 3. malim, malis, malit, malimus, malitis, malint		
			PERF.	1. voluerim	2. noluerim 3. maluerim
Historic	{	IMPERF.	1. vellem	2. nollem	3. mallem
		PLUPERF.	1. voluissem	2. noluissem	3. maluissem

Gerund—

eundum, -i

Participle—

PRES.	iens ; GEN. euntis
FUT.	iturus, -a, -um

Gerundive—

In compounds, eundus, eunda, eundum

(d) **Fio, fieri, factus sum.****Indicative—**

Primary	{ PRES.	fio, fis, fit [fimus, fitis], fiunt
	{ PERF.	factus (-a, -um), sum, &c.
	{ FUT. SIMP.	fiam, fies, &c.
	{ FUT. PERF.	factus (-a, um), ero, &c.
Historic	{ IMPERF.	fiebam, &c.
	{ PRET.	factus, (-a, -um), sum
	{ PLUPERF.	factus (-a, -um), eram

Subjunctive—

Primary	{ PRES.	fiam, fias, &c.
	{ PERF.	factus (-a, -um), sim, &c.
Historic	{ IMPERF.	fierem, &c.
	{ PLUPERF.	factus (-a, -um), essem, &c.

Imperative—

fi, fite

Infinitive—

PRES.	fieri
PERF.	factus (-a, -um), esse
FUT.	factum iri

Participles—

PERF.	factus, -a, -um
GERUNDIVE	faciendus, -a, -um

(e) fero, ferre, tuli, latum (*I bear*).

Indicative—

Primary	PRES.	{ Act. fero, fers, fert, ferimus, fertis, ferunt Pas. feror, ferris, fertur, ferimur, ferimini, feruntur
	PERF.	{ Act. tuli, &c. Pas. latus (-a, -um), sum, &c.
	FUT. SIMP.	{ Act. feram, feres, &c. Pas. ferar { fereris, &c. ferere
Historic	FUT. PERF.	{ Act. tulero, &c. Pas. latus (-a, -um), sum, &c.
	IMPERF.	{ Act. ferebam, &c. Pas. ferebar, &c.
	PRETER.	{ Act. tuli, &c. Pas. latus (-a, -um) sum, &c.
	PLUPERF.	{ Act. tulissem, &c. Pas. latus (-a, -um) essem, &c.

Subjunctive—

Primary	PRES.	{ Act. feram, feras, &c. Pas. ferar { feraris, &c. ferare
	PERF.	{ Act. tulerim Pas. latus sim
Historic	FUT.	laturus (-a, -um) sim
	IMPERF.	{ Act. ferrem Pas. ferrer
	PLUPERF.	{ Act. tulissem Pas. latus essem
	FUT.	Act. laturus essem

Imperative—

{ Act. { fer ferto } fertor { ferte fertote } feruntor	{ Pas. { ferre fertor }	ferto fertor ferimini, feruntor

Infinitive—

PRES.	{ Act. ferre Pas. ferri
PERF.	{ Act. tulisse Pas. latus (-a, -um) esse
FUT.	{ Act. laturus (-a, -um) esse Pas. latum iri

Gerund—

ferendum, -i, &c.

Supines—

1. latum, 2. latu

Participles—

Act. *pres.* ferens, *fut.* laturus
 Pas. *perf.* latus, *ger.* ferendus

(f) Edo, edere (or esse), edi, esum (*I eat*).

Indicative —

Primary	PRES.	ēdo { edis { edit } es { est }	edīmus { edītis } estis }	edunt
	PERF.	edi, &c.		
	FUT. SIMP.	edam, edes, &c.		
	FUT. PERF.	edero, &c.		
Historic	IMPERF.	edēbam, &c.		
	PRETER.	ēdi, &c.		
	PLUPERF.	ēderam, &c.		

Subjunctive—

Primary	PRES.	{ edam, edas, &c. edim, edis, &c.
	PERF.	ēderim, &c.
	FUT.	esurus (-a, -um) sim
Historic	IMPERF.	{ ederem, &c. essem, &c.
	PLUPERF.	edissem, &c.
	FUT.	esurus (-a, -um) essem

Imperative—

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ede} \\ \text{es} \\ \text{edito} \\ \text{esto} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{edito} \\ \text{esto} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{edite} \\ \text{este} \\ \text{editote} \\ \text{estote} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{editote} \\ \text{estote} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} \text{edito} \\ \text{esto} \end{array}} \right\} \text{edunto}$
--	---	--	---	---

Infinitive—

PRES.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{edere} \\ \text{esse} \end{array} \right\}$
PERF.	edissee
FUT.	esurus (-a, -um) esse

Gerund—

edendum, -i, &c.

Supines—

1. esum, 2. esu

Participles—

PRES.	ēdens
FUT.	ēsurus, -a, -um
GERUNDIVE	ēdendus, -a, -um

(g) **queo**, *I am capable*, and **nequeo**, *I am incapable*, are conjugated like **eo**, but have no imperative, future participle, or gerund.

(h) **facio**, *I make*, has sometimes **faxo**, **faxis**, for the future indicative simple or perfect, and **faxim** for the perfect subjunctive.

N.B.—**facio** when compounded with a preposition forms its passive regularly, as—

conficio, *I finish*; **conficior**, *I am finished*.

(i) **do**, *I give*, in old writers, has **duim** for **dem** in present subjunctive.

N.B.—**do**, in composition, is of the 3d Conjugation, except: **circumdo**, *I set round*; **pessumdo**, *I ruin*; **venumdo**, *I set for sale*; **satisdo**, *I give security*, which follow **do** precisely.

138. Table of Verbs forming their principal parts *irregularly*, but other parts *regularly* from these—

I. FIRST CONJUGATION.

	Pres.	Infin.	Perf.	Supine.
Usual form :	(a-o) -o	-āre	a-vi	a-tum
	amo	-are	ama-vi	ama-tum

Exceptions.

	Pres.	Infin.	Perf.	Supine.	
(1) 1. crepo		-are	crepui	crepitum	<i>creak</i>
2. cubo		-are	cubui	cubitum	<i>lie down</i>
3. domo		-are	domui	domitum	<i>tame</i>
4. mico		-are	micui	...	<i>glitter</i>
5. plico		-are	-plicui	-plicitum	<i>fold</i>
6. sono		-are	sonui	sonitum	<i>sound</i>
7. tono		-are	tonui	tonitum	<i>thunder</i>
8. veto		-are	vetui	vetitum	<i>forbid</i>
(2) seco		-are	secui	sectum	<i>cut</i>
(3) 1. do		-are	dedi	datum	<i>give</i>
2. sto		-are	steti	statum	<i>stand</i>
(4) 1. juvo		-are	juvi	jutum	<i>help</i>
2. lavo		-are	lavi	lotum	<i>wash</i>

(1) 5. Also plicavi, plicatum. -plicui, -plicitum — forms thus noted are only used in the compounds.

(3) 1. do, dare, has short *ă* throughout; with the compounds circumdo, surround; pessumdo, ruin; venumdo, put on sale, which form -dedi, -datum. The other compounds pass to the 3d Conjugation, and form -didi, -ditum.

2. Comp. ad-, con-, ob-, per-, prae-sto, &c., form stiti, statum (-stitum rare).

(4) 2. Also sup. lavatum.

II. SECOND CONJUGATION.

	Pres.	Infin.	Perf.	Supine.
Usual form :	-eo	-ēre	-ui	-itum
	mon-eo	-ere	mon-ui	mon-itum

Exceptions.

	Fres.	Infin.	Perf.	Supine.	
(1)	1. deleo	-ere	delevi	deletum	<i>blot out</i>
	2. fleo	-ere	flevi	fletum	<i>weep</i>
	3. -pleo	-ere	-plevi	-pletum	<i>fill</i>
(2)	1. doceo	-ere	docui	doctum	<i>teach</i>
	2. misceo	-ere	miscui	mistum	<i>mix</i>
	3. teneo	-ere	tenui	-tentum	<i>hold</i>
(3)	1. augeo	-ere	auxi	auctum	<i>increase</i>
	2. torqueo	-ere	torsi	tortum	<i>twist</i>
	3. lugeo	-ere	luxi	...	<i>mourn</i>
(4)	1. mulceo	-ere	mulsi	mulsum	<i>soothe</i>
	2. ardeo	-ere	arsī	arsum	<i>take fire</i>
	3. rideo	-ere	risi	risum	<i>laugh</i>
	4. suadeo	-ere	suasi	suasum	<i>advise</i>
	5. maneo	-ere	mansi	mansum	<i>remain</i>
	6. jubeo	-ere	jussi	jussum	<i>command</i>
	7. haereo	-ere	haesi	haesum	<i>stick</i>
	8. fulgeo	-ere	fulsi	...	<i>glitter</i>
	9. luceo	-ere	luxi	...	<i>shine</i>
(5)	1. mordeo	-ere	momordi	morsum	<i>bite</i>
	2. pendeo	-ere	pependi	pensum	<i>hang</i>
	3. spondeo	-ere	spopondi	sponsum	<i>pledge, promise</i>
	4. tondeo	-ere	totondi	tonsum	<i>shear</i>
(6)	1. prandeo	-ere	prandi	pransum	<i>lunch, dine</i>
	2. sedeo	-ere	sedi	sessum	<i>sit</i>
	3. video	-ere	vidi	visum	<i>see</i>
(7)	1. caveo	-ere	cavi	cautum	<i>beware</i>
	2. faveo	-ere	favi	fautum	<i>favour</i>
	3. foveo	-ere	fovi	fotum	<i>cherish</i>
	4. moveo	-ere	movi	motum	<i>move</i>
	5. voveo	-ere	vovi	votum	<i>vow</i>

Semi-deponent.

(8)	1. audeo	-ere	ausus sum	...	<i>dare</i>
	2. gaudeo	-ere	gavisus sum	...	<i>rejoice</i>
	3. soleo	-ere	solitus sum	...	<i>be wont</i>

III. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Form various. reg-ĕre ; indu-ĕre.

	Pres.	Infin.	Perf.	Supine.	
(1)	1. dico	-ere	dixi	dictum	<i>say</i>
	2. duco	-ere	duxi	ductum	<i>lead</i>
	3. cingo	-ere	cinxi	cinctum	<i>surround</i>
	4. coquo	-ere	coxi	coctum	<i>cook</i>
	5. figo	-ere	fixi	fixum	<i>fix</i>
	6. fingo	-ere	finxi	fictum	<i>fashion</i>
	7. jungo	-ere	junxi	junctum	<i>join</i>
	8. pingo	-ere	pinxi	pictum	<i>paint</i>
	9. rego	-ere	rexī	rectum	<i>rule</i>
	10. tego	-ere	texi	tectum	<i>cover</i>
	11. -stinguo	-ere	-stinxi	-stinctum	<i>quench</i>
	12. tinguo	-ere	tinxi	tinctum	<i>dye</i>
	13. unguo	-ere	unxi	unctum	<i>anoint</i>
(2)	1. traho	-ere	traxi	tractum	<i>draw</i>
	2. veho	-ere	vexi	vectum	<i>carry</i>
	3. vivo	-ere	vixi	victum	<i>live</i>
	4. fluo	-ere	fluxi	fluxum	<i>flow</i>
	5. struo	-ere	struxi	structum	<i>pile</i>
	6. -lacio	-ere	-lexi	-lectum	<i>entice</i>
	7. -specio	-ere	-spexi	-spectum	<i>espy</i>
(3)	1. mergo	-ere	mersi	mersum	<i>drown</i>
	2. spargo	-ere	sparsi	sparsum	<i>sprinkle</i>
	3. tergo	-ere	tersi	tersum	<i>wipe</i>
(4)	1. claudio	-ere	clausi	clausum	<i>shut</i>
	2. divido	-ere	divisi	divisum	<i>divide</i>
	3. laedo	-ere	laesi	laesum	<i>hurt</i>
	4. ludo	-ere	lusi	lusum	<i>play</i>
	5. plaudo	-ere	plausi	plausum	<i>clap the hands</i>
	6. rado	-ere	rasi	rasum	<i>scrape</i>
	7. rodo	-ere	rosi	rosum	<i>gnaw</i>
	8. trudo	-ere	trusi	trusum	<i>thrust</i>
	9. vado	-ere	-vasi	-vasum	<i>go</i>
	10. cedo	-ere	cessi	cessum	<i>yield</i>
	11. mitto	-ere	misi	missum	<i>send</i>
	12. quat-io	-ere	(quassi)	quassum	<i>shake</i>
	13. flecto	-ere	flexi	flexum	<i>bend</i>
	14. necto	-ere	nexi	nexum	<i>bind</i>

	Pres.	Infin.	Perf.	Supine.	
(5)	1. carpo	-ere	carpsi	carptum	<i>pluck</i>
	2. repo	-ere	repsi	reptum	<i>creep</i>
	3. scalpo	-ere	scalpsi	scalptum	<i>scratch</i>
	4. serpo	-ere	(serpsi)	(serptum)	<i>crawl</i>
	5. nubo	-ere	nupsi	nuptum	<i>be married</i>
	6. scribo	-ere	scripsi	scriptum	<i>write</i>
(6)	1. como	-ere	compsi	comptum	<i>adorn</i>
	2. demo	-ere	dempsi	demptum	<i>take away</i>
	3. promo	-ere	prompsi	promptum	<i>take forth</i>
	4. sumo	-ere	sumpsi	sumptum	<i>take</i>
	5. temno	-ere	tempsi	temptum	<i>despise</i>
	6. premo	-ere	pressi	pressum	<i>press</i>
	7. gero	-ere	gessi	gestum	<i>carry on</i>
	8. uro	-ere	ussi	ustum	<i>burn</i>
(7)	1. elicio	-ere	elicui	elicium	<i>entice forth</i>
	2. -cumbo	-ere	cubui	cubitum	<i>lie down</i>
	3. rapio	-ere	rapui	raptum	<i>seize</i>
	4. strepo	-ere	strepui	strepitum	<i>roar</i>
	5. meto	-ere	messui	messum	<i>mow</i>
	6. alo	-ere	alui	altum	<i>nourish</i>
	7. colo	-ere	colui	cultum	<i>till</i>
	8. consulo	-ere	consului	consultum	<i>consult</i>
	9. occulo	-ere	occului	occultum	<i>hide</i>
	10. volo	velle	volui	...	<i>wish</i>
	11. fremo	-ere	fremui	fremitum	<i>murmur</i>
	12. gemo	-ere	gemui	gemitum	<i>groan</i>
	13. tremo	-ere	tremui	...	<i>tremble</i>
	14. vomo	-ere	vomui	vomitum	<i>vomit</i>
	15. pono	-ere	posui	positum	<i>place</i>
	16. gigno	-ere	genui	genitum	<i>produce</i>
	17. sero	-ere	serui	sertum	<i>join</i>
	18. texo	-ere	texui	textum	<i>weave</i>
(8)	1. lino	-ere	levi	litum	<i>smear</i>
	2. sino	-ere	sivi	situm	<i>allow</i>
	3. cerno	-ere	crevi	cretum	<i>sift, discern</i>
	4. sperno	-ere	sprevi	spretum	<i>despise</i>
	5. sterno	-ere	stravi	stratum	<i>strew</i>
	6. sero	-ere	sevi	satum	<i>sow</i>

Pres.	Infin.	Perf.	Supine.	
7. <i>cresco</i>	-ere	<i>crevi</i>	<i>cretum</i>	<i>grow</i> [with
8. <i>nosco</i>	-ere	<i>novi</i>	<i>notum</i>	<i>become acquainted</i>
9. <i>pasco</i>	-ere	<i>pavi</i>	<i>pastum</i>	<i>feed</i>
10. <i>quiesco</i>	-ere	<i>quievi</i>	...	<i>rest</i>
11. <i>suesco</i>	-ere	<i>suevi</i>	<i>suetum</i>	<i>be wont</i>
12. <i>cupio</i>	-ere	<i>cupivi</i>	<i>cupitum</i>	<i>desire</i>
13. <i>peto</i>	-ere	<i>petivi</i>	<i>petitum</i>	<i>seek</i>
14. <i>quaero</i>	-ere	<i>quaesivi</i>	<i>quaesitum</i>	<i>seek</i>
15. <i>tero</i>	-ere	<i>trivi</i>	<i>tritum</i>	<i>rub</i>
16. <i>arcesso</i>	-ere	<i>arcessivi</i>	<i>arcessitum</i>	<i>send for</i>
17. <i>laccio</i>	-ere	<i>laccessivi</i>	<i>laccessitum</i>	<i>provoke</i>

Reduplicates.

(9) 1. <i>pendo</i>	-ere	<i>pependi</i>	<i>pensum</i>	<i>weigh</i>
2. <i>tendo</i>	-ere	<i>tetendi</i>	<i>tensum(-tum)</i>	<i>stretch</i>
3. <i>disco</i>	-ere	<i>didici</i>	...	<i>learn</i>
4. <i>posco</i>	-ere	<i>poposci</i>	...	<i>demand</i>
5. <i>curro</i>	-ere	<i>cucurri</i>	<i>cursum</i>	<i>run</i>
6. <i>pungo</i>	-ere	<i>pupugi</i>	<i>punctum</i>	<i>prick</i>
7. <i>tundo</i>	-ere	<i>tutudi</i>	<i>tunsum</i>	<i>thump</i>
8. <i>fallo</i>	-ere	<i>fefelli</i>	<i>falsum</i>	<i>deceive</i>
9. <i>parco</i>	-ere	<i>peperci</i>	<i>parsum</i>	<i>spare</i>
10. <i>pario</i>	-ere	<i>peperi</i>	<i>partum</i>	<i>bring forth</i>
11. <i>cado</i>	-ere	<i>cecid</i>	<i>casum</i>	<i>fall</i>
12. <i>cano</i>	-ere	<i>cecini</i>	<i>cantum</i>	<i>sing</i>
13. <i>pango</i>	-ere	<i>pepigi</i>	<i>pactum</i>	<i>fasten</i>
14. <i>tango</i>	-ere	<i>tetigi</i>	<i>tactum</i>	<i>touch</i>
15. <i>caedo</i>	-ere	<i>cecid</i>	<i>caesum</i>	<i>cut, beat, kill</i>
16. <i>pello</i>	-ere	<i>pepuli</i>	<i>pulsum</i>	<i>drive</i>
17. <i>tollo</i>	-ere	<i>sustuli</i>	<i>sublatum</i>	<i>take up</i>
18. Compounds of <i>do</i> :				
<i>abdo</i>	-ere	<i>abdidi</i>	<i>abditum</i>	<i>hide</i>
<i>addo</i>	-ere	<i>addidi</i>	<i>additum</i>	<i>add</i>
<i>condo</i>	-ere	<i>condidi</i>	<i>conditum</i>	<i>found, hide</i>
<i>credo</i>	-ere	<i>credidi</i>	<i>creditum</i>	<i>believe</i>
<i>dedo</i>	-ere	<i>dedidi</i>	<i>deditum</i>	<i>give up</i>
<i>edo</i>	-ere	<i>edidi</i>	<i>editum</i>	<i>give forth, utter</i>
<i>perdo</i>	-ere	<i>perdidi</i>	<i>perditum</i>	<i>lose</i>
<i>prodo</i>	-ere	<i>prodidi</i>	<i>proditum</i>	<i>betray</i>

	Pres.	Infin.	Perf.	Supine.	
	reddo	-ere	reddidi	redditum	<i>restore</i>
	subdo	-ere	subdidi	subditum	<i>substitute</i>
	trado	-ere	tradidi	traditum	<i>deliver</i>
	vendo	-ere	vendidi	venditum	<i>sell</i>
19.	Reduplicated from <i>sto</i> :				
	sisto	-ere	stiti	statum	<i>make to stand</i>
	(9) 9. Also perf. <i>parsi</i> .				
(10) 1.	facio	-ere	feci	factum	<i>make</i>
2.	jacio	-ere	jeci	jactum	<i>throw</i>
3.	linquo	-ere	liqui	-lictum	<i>leave</i>
4.	vinco	-ere	vici	victum	<i>conquer</i>
5.	ago	-ere	egi	actum	<i>do</i>
6.	frango	-ere	fregi	fractum	<i>break</i>
7.	lego	-ere	legi	lectum	<i>choose, read</i>
8.	fugio	-ere	fugi	fugitum	<i>fly</i>
9.	edo	-ere	edi	esum	<i>eat</i>
10.	fodio	-ere	fodi	fossum	<i>dig</i>
11.	fundo	-ere	fudi	fusum	<i>pour</i>
12.	capio	-ere	cepi	captum	<i>take</i>
13.	rumpo	-ere	rupi	ruptum	<i>break</i>
14.	emo	-ere	emi	emptum	<i>buy, take</i>
(11) 1.	findo	-ere	fidi	fissum	<i>cleave</i>
2.	scindo	-ere	scidi	scissum	<i>tear</i>
(12) 1.	-cando	-ere	-cendi	-censum	<i>set on fire</i>
2.	-fendo	-ere	-fendi	-fensum	<i>strike</i>
3.	pando	-ere	pandi	pansum	<i>spread</i>
4.	prehendo	-ere	prehendi	prehensum	<i>grasp</i>
5.	scando	-ere	scandi	scansum	<i>climb</i>
6.	verto	-ere	verti	versum	<i>turn</i>
7.	bibo	-ere	bibi	bibitum	<i>drink</i>
8.	vello	-ere	velli, vulsi	vulsum	<i>rend</i>
(13) 1.	acuo	-ere	acui	acutum	<i>sharpen</i>
2.	arguo	-ere	argui	argutum	<i>prove</i>
3.	exuo	-ere	exui	exutum	<i>put off</i>
4.	imbuo	-ere	imbui	imbutum	<i>tinge</i>
5.	induo	-ere	indui	indutum	<i>put on</i>
6.	luo	-ere	lui	luitum	<i>wash, atone</i>
7.	metuo	-ere	metui	...	<i>fear</i>

	Pres.	Infin.	Perf.	Supine.	
8.	minuo	-ere	minui	minutum	<i>lessen</i>
9.	nuo	-ere	nui	...	<i>nod</i>
10.	ruo	-ere	rui	ruitum	<i>rush, fall</i>
11.	statuo	-ere	statui	statutum	<i>set up</i>
12.	tribuo	-ere	tribui	tributum	<i>assign</i>
13.	solvo	-ere	solvi	solutum	<i>loosen</i>
14.	volvo	-ere	volvi	volutum	<i>roll</i>

IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Usual form :	-io	-ire	-ivi	-itum
	audio	-ire	audivi	auditum.

Exceptions.

	Pres.	Infin.	Perf.	Supine.	
(1) 1.	aperio	-ire	aperui	apertum	<i>open</i>
2.	operio	-ire	operui	opertum	<i>cover</i>
3.	salio	-ire	salui	(-sultum)	<i>leap</i>
4.	sepelio	-ire	sepelivi	sepultum	<i>bury</i>
(2) 1.	fulcio	-ire	fulsi	fultum	<i>prop</i>
2.	sancio	-ire	sanxi	sanctum	<i>consecrate</i>
3.	vincio	-ire	vinxi	vinctum	<i>bind</i>
4.	haurio	-ire	hausi	haustum	<i>drain</i>
5.	sentio	-ire	sensi	sensum	<i>feel</i>
(3) 1.	comperio	-ire	comperi	compertum	<i>find</i>
2.	reperio	-ire	repperi	repertum	<i>discover</i>
3.	venio	-ire	veni	ventum	<i>come</i>

V. DEPONENT VERBS.

(1) First Conjugation (part. perf. -ātus).

(2) Second Conjugation (part. perf. -ītus).

Exceptions.

	Pres.	Infin.	Part. Perf.	
1.	fateor	-eri	fassus	<i>confess.</i>
2.	misereor	-eri	misertus or miserītus	<i>have pity on</i>
3.	reor	-eri	ratus	<i>think</i>

(3) Third Conjugation (part. perf. -tus or -sus).

	Pres.	Infin.	Part. Perf.	
(a)	1. fungor	-i	functus	<i>perform</i>
	2. amplector	-i	amplexus	<i>embrace</i>
	3. nitor	-i	nisus or nixus	<i>strive</i>
	4. patior	-i	passus	<i>suffer</i>
	5. utor	-i	usus	<i>use</i>
	6. gradior	-i	gressus	<i>step</i>
	7. labor	-i	lapsus	<i>glide</i>
	8. morior	-i	mortuus	<i>die</i>
	9. queror	-i	questus	<i>complain</i>
	10. fruor	-i	fruitus	<i>enjoy</i>
	11. loquor	-i	locutus	<i>speak</i>
	12. sequor	-i	secutus	<i>follow</i>
(b)	1. apiscor	-i	aptus	<i>obtain</i>
	2. comminiscor	-i	commentus	<i>devise</i>
	3. expergiscor	-i	experrectus	<i>wake up</i>
	4. fatiscor	-i	fessus	<i>grow weary</i>
	5. irascor	-i	iratus	<i>be angry</i>
	6. nanciscor	-i	nactus	<i>obtain</i>
	7. nascor	-i	natus	<i>be born</i>
	8. obliviscor	-i	oblitus	<i>forget</i>
	9. paciscor	-i	pactus	<i>bargain</i>
	10. proficiscor	-i	profectus	<i>set out</i>
	11. ulciscor	-i	ultus	<i>avenge</i>

(4) Fourth Conjugation (part. perf. -itus).

Exceptions.

	Pres.	Infin.	Part. Perf.	
1.	assentior	-iri	assensus	<i>agree to</i>
2.	experior	-iri	expertus	<i>try</i>
3.	metior	-iri	mensus	<i>measure</i>
4.	opperior	-iri	oppertus	<i>wait for</i>
5.	ordior	-iri	orsus	<i>begin</i>
6.	orior	-iri	ortus	<i>rise</i>

PARTICLES OR INDECLINABLE WORDS.

N.B.—A particle which cannot stand alone, but must be joined to another word, is called an **enclitic**.

139.

Adverbs.

(1) **Simple adverbs** which qualify a verb or adjective in their own clause are **interrogative** or **demonstrative**, as—

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| (i) Of place, | ubi ? <i>where ?</i> ibi, <i>there</i> . |
| (ii) Of time, | quando ? <i>when ?</i> tum, <i>then</i> . |
| (iii) Of number, | quotiens ? <i>how often ?</i> bis, <i>twice</i> |
| (iv) Of description, | quomodo ? <i>how ?</i> sapienter, <i>wisely</i> . |
| (v) Negative, | non, haud = <i>not</i> . |
| (vi) Of question, | num, nonne, -ne (enclitic) = ? |

(2) **Connective adverbs** which, besides qualifying a word in their own clause, connect that clause with another, as—

Quum, *when*; dum, *whilst*; ubi, *where*; ut, *that, as*; si, *if*. (265a.)

N.B.—In Latin an adverb is used to develop an idea contained in the verb it qualifies, but not to add a new idea. Thus we can say, **celeriter** cucurrit (*he ran swiftly*), but not **fortiter** cucurrit (*he ran pluckily*).

140.

Prepositions.

(1) The following prepositions take the **accusative** :—

ad,	<i>to, at.</i>	circa,	<i>about.</i>
adversus	} <i>towards, against.</i>	cis, citra,	<i>on the near side.</i>
adversum		contra,	<i>against.</i>
ante,	<i>before.</i>	erga,	<i>towards.</i>
apud,	<i>at, away.</i>	extra,	<i>outside of.</i>
circum,	<i>around.</i>	infra,	<i>below.</i>

inter, <i>between.</i>	præter, <i>besides.</i>
intra, <i>within.</i>	prope, <i>near.</i>
juxta, <i>near.</i>	propter, <i>on account of, near.</i>
ob, <i>overagainst, by reason of.</i>	secundum, <i>according to, along.</i>
penes, <i>in the power of.</i>	supra, <i>above.</i>
per, <i>through.</i>	trans, <i>on the far side.</i>
pone, <i>behind.</i>	ultra, <i>beyond.</i>
post, <i>after.</i>	versus, versum, <i>towards.</i>

(2) The following take the **ablative**:—

a, ab, abs, <i>by, from.</i>	palam, <i>in sight of.</i>
absque, <i>without.</i>	præ, { <i>before, owing to, compared</i>
clam, <i>without the knowledge of.</i>	{ <i>with.</i>
coram, <i>in presence of.</i>	pro, <i>before, for, instead of.</i>
cum, <i>with.</i>	sine, <i>without.</i>
de, <i>from, concerning.</i>	tenus, <i>reaching to, as far as.</i>
ex, e, <i>out of, from.</i>	

(3) The following take the **accusative** or **ablative** according to the notion expressed:—

in { <i>into, against (acc.)</i>	sub, { <i>up to (acc.)</i>
{ <i>in, among (abl.)</i>	{ <i>under (abl.)</i>
super, <i>over.</i>	subter, <i>under.</i>

N.B.—(1) **Cum** with pronouns and relatives is **enclitic**—

Mecum, nobiscum, tecum, vobiscum, secum, quocum
or **quicum, quibuscum.**

N.B.—(2) **Clam** rarely takes the accusative.

N.B.—(3) **Versus** and **tenus** follow their case, as—

Romam **versus** (*towards Rome*).

Æthiopia **tenus** (*as far as Ethiopia*).

Also the adverbial **ergo**, sometimes called a preposition, is followed by a **genitive**—

Cujus rei **ergo** (*for the sake of which*).

(4) **Cum** in composition becomes **con** or **com** (*composition*).

141. **Conjunctions** couple without qualifying [265 *N.B.*, 286, 286*a*].

142. **Interjections** are exclamatory words used to draw attention or to express feeling, as—

O (*O !*) ; **eheu** (*alas !*) **ecce** (*behold !*)

N.B.—(1) **O**, **a**, **eheu**, **pro**, may be used with a nominative, vocative, or accusative.


N.B.—(2) **En** and **ecce** with nominative or accusative.

N.B.—(3) **Hei**, **væ**, with dative.

[143-200.]

PART III.

SYNTAX.

 The pages on the left contain the Text, those on the right the Notes. The letter *a* after a number indicates notes on that paragraph of the text.

* * * Syntax deals with **the structure of sentences**.

Every sentence must contain a **finite verb**, *stating, asking, or ordering* something.

That about which the statement is made, or the question is asked, or to which the order is given, is the **subject**.

Many verbs require another word to complete their sense. Such word is their **complement**.

VERB AND SUBJECT.

201. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative, and the verb agrees with it in number and person—

Præceptor docet. *The master teaches.*

Abite vos. *Go you away.*

Docetne præceptor? *Does the master teach?*

201a. Case-Notions—

Cases are not used indifferently. The same fundamental notion is always attached to the same case.

Nominative=Subject of a finite verb.

Accusative=Term or range of an action. Subject of an infinitive.

Dative=Remote object affected or effected by an action or quality.

Genitive—Qualifies nouns as an adjective.

Ablative—Qualifies verbs, adjectives, and adverbs as an adverb.

Locative—Also adverbial.

Vocative—Interjectional.

N.B.—The meaning and use of the accusative and ablative may be enlarged by prepositions, without departure from the fundamental case-notion, thus—

Eo Romam=I go to Rome ; ... **ad Romam**=to its neighbourhood ; ... **Romam versus** = towards Rome ; ... **in Romam**=against it.

- (1) Often in Latin the subject is not *separately* expressed, being contained in the person-ending of the verb—

Amaba-m=I was loving ; **amaba-mus**=we were loving.

When the subject is expressed twice, once separately and once in the verb, it must be the same, as to number and person, in both cases.

- (2) Besides a noun substantive or pronoun, the subject may be—

(a) *An infinitive or gerund* (verbal noun), as—

Ludere juvat. *Playing is pleasant.*

Legendum est mihi. *I must read—reading is for me.*

(β) *A noun clause*—

Cæsarem adesse constat. *It is certain that Cæsar is at hand.*

- (3) (a) **A compound subject is plural though its parts be singular**—

Cæsar atque Pompeius compares erant. *Cæsar and Pompey were much alike.*

N.B.—If conjoined nouns form *one idea*, the verb is singular—

Senatus populusque decrevit. *The senate and people has decreed.*

(Compare “Early to bed and early to rise *makes*,” &c.)

- (β) **A subject is of the 1st person if any of its parts be so ; and of the 2d if any part be of the 2d and none of the 1st—**

Ego et tu et Cæsar bene valemus. *You and Cæsar and I are well.*

VERB AND COMPLEMENT.

202. A copulative verb couples with its subject another word to qualify it—

Cæsar fit consul. Cæsar is made consul.

Cicero erat doctus. Cicero was learned.

Domini est terra. The earth is the Lord's.

N.B.—For the construction of words qualifying nouns, see 206-208.

203.—(1) A transitive verb takes an accusative of the direct object—

Pater amat filium. The father loves his son.

(2) The direct object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive—

Filius a patre amatur. The son is loved by his father.

(3) A factitive verb couples with its direct object another word to qualify it—

Cæsarem creant dictatorem. They make Cæsar dictator.

N.B.—Factitive verbs become copulative in the passive—

Cæsar dictator creatur. Cæsar is made dictator.

204.—A modal verb takes an infinitive to complete its sense—

Soleo dicere. I am wont to say.

Cogor abire. I am forced to go.

205.—A trajective word takes a dative of the indirect object—

Noceo tibi. I do you harm.

Urbi appropinquat. He draws near the city.

Virgilium comparo Homero. I compare Virgil to Homer.

N.B.—Trajective words include not verbs only, but adjectives and adverbs. See rules for the dative, 227-234.

Tu et Cicero **fuistis** consules. *You and Cicero have been consuls.*

N.B.—The 1st person comes first in Latin—

“My king and I” = *ego et rex meus.*

(4) When the subject is a collective noun in the singular, the verb is plural if the idea of plurality be prominent—

Multitudo **abeunt**. *The crowd depart.*

Pars **capti sunt**. *Some were taken.*

Juventus **ruit certantque**. *The youth rushes out—in a body—and fight—individually.*

203a. (1) Participles, gerunds, and supines take the same cases as do their verbs—

Alios docendo doctus fies. *By teaching others you will become learned.*

Legatos misit rogatum **auxilium**. *He sent envoys to ask for help.*

(2) The direct object may be—

An infinitive, as—

Ludere amat. *He loves playing.*

A noun clause, as—

Cæsarem adesse cerno. *I perceive that Cæsar is at hand.*

Quærit quis fecerit. *He asks who has done it.*

204a.—Modal verbs are so called because their statement regards only the *mode*, or manner, of an action. Thus—

Soleo dicere = *I habitually say.*

Cogor abire = *I go on compulsion.*


205a.

* * Words qualifying nouns may be **attributes** or **predicates**.
They are—

Attributes if assumed to belong to them (joined directly to them).

Predicates if asserted to belong to them (joined by a verb).

Note this distinction in the examples given.

 The above rules regard sentences reduced to their essential parts.

Qualifications may be added to nouns, verbs, and adjectives.

These qualifications may be *words* or *clauses*. Clauses may also take the place of *nouns*.

Phrases, or collections of words not making complete sense, are treated as words.

QUALIFICATION OF NOUNS.

* * A noun may be qualified—

- (1) By another noun naming the same thing.
- (2) By an adjective.
- (3) By another noun naming a different thing.
- (4) By a relative clause.

206. A noun qualifying another noun naming the same thing agrees with it in case, and is said to be in apposition with it—

Cæsar fit consul. *Cæsar is made consul.*

Urbem Athenas incendit Xerxes. *Xerxes burnt the city of Athens.*

207. An adjective qualifying a noun agrees with it in gender, number, and case—

Pius Æneas. *The good Æneas.*

Hac in re. *In this matter.*

Mei sunt libri. *The books are mine.*

208.—(1) A noun qualifying another noun which names a different thing is in the genitive—

Urbi Galliæ. *A city of Gaul.*

Omnia sunt **victoris.** *All is the conqueror's.*

Est regis punire rebelles. *It is the king's province to punish rebels.*

206a. } (1) Nouns in apposition may differ in gender and number—
207a. }

Cicero decus patriæ. *Cicero the ornament of his country.*

Filius deliciæ matris. *A son his mother's darling.*

* * Words are **conjoined** when they are linked together, not qualifying one another.

(2) (i) **Nouns conjoined** are treated as plurals, and as masculines if persons are named and one be masculine—

Pater mihi et mater cari sunt. *My father and mother are dear to me.*

(ii) **When things without life are named, they are treated as neuter if the genders differ—**

Gloria divitiæ honores caduca sunt. *Glory, wealth, and honour are fleeting.*

N.B.—But sometimes the verb or adjective agrees with *the nearest noun*—

Mens et animus et consilium et sententia civitatis posita est in legibus. *The mind, soul, purpose, and feeling of the State abides in its laws.*

(iii) **Infinitives and noun clauses are neuter.**

(3) **When a class of things is spoken of, a masculine or feminine noun may have a neuter predicate—**

Triste lupo stabulis. *The wolf is a sad thing for sheep-folds.*

Varium et mutabile femina. *Woman is a fickle and changeful thing.*

Turpitudine pejus est quam dolor. *Disgrace is something worse than pain.*

208a. (1) **The genitive has usually the force of a determinative adjective (genitive of definition)—**

(i) **As the possessive of words having no possessive adjective form.** (When such form exists, the genitive is not used for possession)—

Hæc sunt Cæsaris illa mea (not *mei*). *These things are Cæsar's, those are mine.*

N.B.—With proper names of gods, **ædes** (the temple) or **domus** (the house) is sometimes understood—

- (2) Nouns derived from transitive verbs may take a genitive of the subject or of the object of the verb—

(*Subjective*) *Serpentis morsus. The bite of a snake.*

(*Objective*) *Amor gloriæ. Desire of glory.*

- (3) Adjectives derived from transitive verbs take a genitive of the object—

Avidus gloriæ. Desirous of glory.

N.B.—(1) Any word having a partitive force takes a genitive of that whereto the part belongs—

Multum pecuniæ. Much money.

Quid rei? What is the matter?

Senior fratrum. The elder of the brothers.

Satis nivis. Snow enough.

- (2) A genitive with verbs or adjectives defines the nature of a noun implied in them—

Avidus gloriæ = possessed by desire of glory.

(Compare "*bloodthirsty*.")

Arguit furti = he brings a charge of theft.

RELATIVE CLAUSE.

* * A **Relative** adjective points to a preceding noun (its antecedent), and connects it with a new predicate.

Relative and antecedent stand in separate clauses.

The relative clause qualifies the antecedent.

Ventum erat ad Vestæ. *We had come to Vesta's shrine.*

Ad Cæsaris. *To Cæsar's house.*

(Compare "At St Paul's.")

- (ii) As a **demonstrative**, defining the class to which a thing belongs—

Pondus **auri**. *A mass of gold.*

Pars **hominum**. *A part of the men.*

Fies **nobilium fontium**. *You will be one of the storied founts.*

- (2) (i) The **genitive** can be used as an adjective of quality or quantity only when an attribute is added—

Vir **priscae severitatis**. *A man of antique rigour.*

Ager **quadraginta jugerum**. *The forty-acre field.*

- (ii) For the **genitive of quality** the **ablative** may be substituted—

Vir **prisca severitate**. *A man (endowed) with antique rigour.*

- (iii) **Possessive adjectives** may, like **genitives**, be used with verbal nouns **subjectively** or **objectively**—

Timor **meus** = $\begin{cases} \text{my fear (of some one).} \\ \text{(some one's) fear of me.} \end{cases}$

- (iv) The **genitive of a gerundive** used with **sum**, in Livy and later writers, denotes the effect towards which something tends—

Concordia dissolvendæ **tribunicia potestatis est**. *Harmony tends to undo the tribune's power.*

- (3) A **possessive** may be omitted when no ambiguity can follow—

Filium amo. *I love my son.*

- (4) Rarely the name of a town is put in the **genitive** with another noun naming the same—

Urbs **Patāvi** (Livy). *The city of Padua.*

In oppido **Antiochiæ** (Cicero). *In the town of Antioch.*

- (5) The **adjectival nature of the genitive** is shown in the words **hujusmodi**, **ejusmodi**, **cujusmodi**, &c., which are used as **indeclinable adjectives**, thus—

Hujusmodi vir = *a man of this sort.*

Hujusmodi viri = *men of this sort.*

Also in such phrases as—

Sua ipsius res. *His own matter.*

209.—(1) The number and gender of the relative are those of the antecedent.

Its case is that in which the antecedent would be if repeated in the relative clause.

(2) Words agreeing with the relative are of that gender, number, and person which the antecedent if repeated would require—

Cæsar quem interfecit Brutus hæc scripsit. *Cæsar, whom Brutus killed, wrote this.*

Nobis qui adsumus placet hoc. *This seems good to us who are present.*

Tu dea es quæ tecum loqueris. *Thou art a goddess who speakest with me.*

CASES WITH VERBS AND ADJECTIVES.

* * (1) Verbs and adjectives are qualified by **adverbs**, or by **nouns used adverbially**, adding **circumstances** of *description, time, place, or amount*.

* * (2) All cases attached to verbs except the **accusative of the direct object** may be considered to be adverbial adjuncts. They are retained by the verb in the passive.

DESCRIPTION: Cause, Manner, Instrument.

210.—(1) Cause, manner, and instrument are expressed by the ablative with verbs or adjectives—

Metu pallens. *He is pale with fear.*

Ardet ira. *He is on fire with rage.*

Dimidio major. *Half as large again.*

Captus oculis. *Blind.*

Cornu nos petit taurus. *The bull assails us with his horn.*

209a. (1) The antecedent is frequently understood in the relative itself—

Qui hoc fecit adstat. He *who did this* is present.

N.B.—In such cases the antecedent is **is**, the natural correlative of **qui**.

(2) The relative frequently agrees, by **attraction**, not with its antecedent but with a noun which follows—

Thebæ **quod** Bœotiæ caput est. *Thebes, which is the capital of Bœotia.*

(3) Demonstratives may be similarly attracted—

Colere deos **ea** est vera pietas. *To worship the gods, this is true wisdom.*

* * I. Infinitives, gerunds, and supines, though nouns, are, by reason of their *verbal force*, qualified by *adverbs*, not by *adjectives*—

Latine loqui. *Talking Latin.*

Leges **Latine** scribendi. *Rules of Latin writing.*

N.B.—Departures from this usage are very rare—

Scire **tuum** nihil est (Persius). *Thy knowledge is naught.*

II. In like manner nouns and adjectives derived from verbs sometimes retain a verbal force, and take the same case as does the verb—

Reditio **domum**. *A return home.*

Castra vitabundus. *Avoiding the camp.*

Me auscultatio. *A listening to me.*

III. Adjectives used as predicates frequently convey an adverbial force—

Feci **inventus**. *I did it unwillingly.*

(Compare “The rose smells sweet.”)

In such a case the verb is copulative, and the adjective is its complement.

IV. Prepositions are used whenever the meaning conveyed by a case alone would be ambiguous.

210a. (1) Of these meanings that of **instrument** belongs most properly to the ablative, and that of **cause** least so.

A preposition is therefore often used to distinguish *manner* from *instrument*, or *cause* from *manner*—

- (2) The ablative of a living agent can be used after passive verbs only, and always with a preposition—

Cornu a tauro petimur. *We are assailed by the bull with his horn.*

211. Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vescor take an ablative; potior sometimes a genitive—

Utitur fraude. *He employs deceit (helps himself by it).*
Carne vescuntur. *They live on meat (feed themselves with it).*

SOURCE AND SEPARATION.

212. The ablative denotes source or separation—

Dea natus. *Born of a goddess.*
Ex Thetide natus. *Born of Thetis.*
Patria expulsus. *Banished.*
E patria discessit. *He left his native land.*

- 213.—(1) Verbs signifying plenty or want take the ablative, rarely the genitive—

Abundat divitiis. *He abounds in riches.*
Caret omni culpa. *He is without fault.*
Tui indigeo consilii. *I stand in need of your advice.*

- (2) Adjectives of plenty or want take the ablative or genitive—

Plenus iræ. *Full of anger.*
Plenus ira. *Filled with anger.*
Dives agris. *Rich in land.*
Pauper aquæ. *Poor in water.*

- (3) With opus est and usus est the nominative or ablative may be used—

Dux nobis opus est. *We need a leader (a leader is a need).*
Nunc viribus usus. *Now need we our strength.*

Virtute vivere = *to live by one's valour.*

Cum virtute vivere = *to live in company with virtue*
(virtuously).

Gaudio exsultavit = *he jumped joyously.*

Præ gaudio exsultavit = *he jumped for joy.*

- (2) The supine in **u** is an ablative, and is used with adjectives to denote manner—

Horribile visu = *horrible to behold (in the beholding).*

- 211a. **Utor**, &c., are **middle verbs** whose object is the same as the subject—

utor = I help *myself*.

fruor = I enjoy *myself*.

fungor = I acquit *myself*.

vescor = I feed *myself*.

potior = I possess *myself*, or I make *myself* master.

- 212a. A preposition adds to the notion of separation or distance, thus—

Ortus **regibus** = a king's son.

Ortus **ab regibus** = a distant descendant.

- 213a. (1) Verbs or adjectives qualified by a genitive may be considered to contain a noun which this genitive qualifies (supra, 208, *N.B.* 2).

- (2) Livy, and later writers, sometimes use the genitive with **opus** and **usus**—

Temporis opus est. *There is need of time.*

Still more rare is the *accusative*—

Opus est **cibum** (Plautus). *We need food.*

- (3) **Assuetus** (*accustomed*) and **assuefio** (*I become accustomed*) take the ablative—

Puro sermone assuefactus. *Accustomed to pure speech.*

Also **stare** = to stand by—

Stare conditionibus. *To stand by the conditions.*

PLACE.

214.—(1) For the names of towns, the locative expresses place where, the accusative place whither, the ablative place whence—

Romæ, Corinthi, Athenis, et Carthagine vixit. *He lived at Rome, Corinth, Athens, and Carthage.*
Ibimus Coccium. *We will go to Ribchester.*
Epheso fugit. *He fled from Ephesus.*

(2) The names of islands identified with their capitals follow the same rules: also **domus** (*home*) and **rus** (*the country*)—

Confūgit Delum. *He fled to Delos.*
Domi manet. *He stays at home.*
Rure redit. *He comes back from the country.*

(3) Other words are used with prepositions—

In urbe vixit. *He lived in the city.*
In Britanniam ivit. *He went to Britain.*
E Gallia rediit. *He returned from Gaul.*

N.B.—This rule is not strictly adhered to in verse.

SPACE.

215. Extent of space is expressed by the accusative—

Fossa duodecim pedes alta. *A ditch twelve feet deep.*
Tridui iter processit. *He advanced a three-days' march.*

214a. (1) *Locative*. So we say *at London, at Malta*, but not *at America* nor *at Ireland*.

(2) The *locative* is in the singular of the first and second declension similar to the *genitive*.

In the third declension and all plurals it is similar to the *ablative*.

(3) Other locatives are **humi** (on the ground), **belli** (at the wars), **militiæ** (on service), **foris** (out of doors).

These are used simply as adverbs : **foris** is also used of motion from.

(4) The rules for place do not apply when a noun or adjective qualifies the name of a town : a preposition must then be used—

Vixit in urbe Roma. *He lived in the city of Rome.*

Ibimus in doctas Athenas. *We will go to the learned Athens.*

N.B.—(i) But with *totus* (the whole) and *medius* (the middle), names of towns and countries, or such words as **urbs**, may be ablative without a preposition—

Media urbe. *In the midst of the city.*

Tota Italia. *In the whole of Italy.*

(ii) **Domus** with a possessive adjective may be locative—

Domi suæ. *In his own house.*

With other adjectives a preposition is used—

In vetere domo. *In the old home.*

(5) When motion is expressed to or from a person who is at a place, the names of both are in the case which is proper to such motion—

Athenas ibo ad amicos. *I will go to my friends at Athens.*

E Gallia ab exercitu rediit. *He returned from the army in Gaul.*

(6) The **supine in um** is an accusative, and is used to express the term of motion—

Eo **piscatum.** *I go a-fishing.*

Legatos Romam misit **rogatum** auxilium. *He sent envoys to Rome to ask for aid.*

215a. If qualifying a noun, dimension is expressed by the genitive (208, i.)—

Fossa duodecim pedum. *A twelve-foot ditch.*

TIME.

216. Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative, extent of time by the accusative—

Idibus Martiis interfectus est. *He was killed on the 15th of March.*

Tribus diebus perfectum est opus. *The work was done in three days.*

Tres annos regnavit. *He reigned three years.*

AMOUNT: Price, Worth, Value.

217.—(1) Price and worth are expressed by the ablative—

Demosthenes docuit **talento**. *Demosthenes gave lessons for a talent.*

Magno id vendidi. *I sold it for a large price.*

Asse carum. *Dear at a farthing.*

Laude dignus. *Worthy of praise.*

Tali me dignor **honore**. *I hold myself worthy of such honour.*

(2) The character of value assigned is defined by the genitive—

Magni sunt tuæ **epistolæ**. *Your letters are highly prized.*

Parvi rem pendet. *He makes light of the matter.*

Illum non **hujus** facio. *I don't care that for him.*

ACCUSATION.

218. The character of a charge is expressed by the genitive—

Arguit me **furti**. *He accuses me of theft.*

Reus est **parricidii**. *He is arraigned for parricide.*

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

219.—(1) A noun with a participle depending for its case on no other word in the sentence is put in the ablative absolute—

Mortuo Romulo regnavit Numa. *When Romulus was dead, Numa reigned.*

His dictis abiit. *Having said this, he went away.*

- (2) The ablative absolute cannot be used when the noun has any function of its own to fulfil in the sentence, thus—

His dictis abiit. Literally—*This being said, he went away.*

But—

Hæc locutus abiit. *Having said this, he went away.*
(Cf. ταῦτ' εἰπών.)

OTHER CASE CONSTRUCTIONS.

Double Accusative.

- * * A transitive verb whose direct action falls upon two objects, takes an accusative of each.

220. Factitive verbs take two accusatives naming the same thing—

Me consulem creant. *They make me consul.*

Illum Africanum nominant. *They name him Africanus.*

221. Verbs of asking, teaching, and concealing may take an accusative both of the person and of the thing—

Posce Deum veniam. *Beg pardon of God.*

Musicam docuit pueros. *He taught boys music.*

Nihil me celat. *He hides nothing from me.*

ACCUSATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVES.

Cognate Accusative.

222. A verb taking no direct object may have an accusative of kindred meaning, or cognate accusative—

Hunc cursum cucurri. *I have run this race.*

Eadem peccat. *He makes the same mistake.*

Dulce ridens. *Laughing sweetly.*

220a. (1) **Factitive** verbs are **copulative** in the **passive**—

Ego consul creor. *I am made consul.*

Ille nominatus est Africanus. *He was named Africanus.*

(2) Factitives do not take two objects : the second accusative is predicative.

221a. (1) Verbs admit of this construction, which may take either accusative alone—

Docuit pueros. *He taught boys.*

Docuit musicam. *He taught music.*

Docuit pueros musicam. *He taught boys music.*

(2) When both accusatives occur, that of the person represents the direct object, and becomes the subject of the passive. The accusative of the thing is in fact an adverbial adjunct, denoting the scope or term of action, and is therefore retained in the passive—

Docentur pueri musicam. *Boys are taught music.*

Hoc non celor. *I am not in the dark as to this.*

(3) Either person or thing may be constructed with a preposition—

Hæc abs te poposci. *I asked this of you.*

De his rebus Cæsarem certiores facit. *He informs Cæsar of this.*

(4) Prepositions (especially **trans**) in composition with verbs sometimes retain their own force, and are followed by an accusative over and above that of the verb—

Copias Rhenum transduxit. *He led his forces across the Rhine.*

N.B.—The preposition is often repeated—

Exercitum trans flumen trajecit. *He passed his army across the river.*

222a.—(1) Compare “I struck a blow,” “I have fought the good fight.”

(2) Transitive verbs used absolutely, or without an object, may take this accusative—

Dulce loquens. *Speaking sweetly.*

(3) A noun in the cognate accusative is generally qualified by an adjective—

Mirum somniavi **somnium.** *I have dreamt a wonderful dream.*

(4) The cognate accusative explains such constructions as—

Vox hominem sonat. *The voice sounds human.*

Cyclopa saltare. *To dance a hornpipe.*

ACCUSATIVE OF CLOSER DEFINITION.

223. An accusative of closer definition is used after passive verbs and adjectives, chiefly by the poets—

Capita velamur. *We have veils on our heads.*

Nube humeros amictus. *With his shoulders clad in cloud.*

Os deo similis. *Like a god in countenance.*

Cetera fulvus. *Tawny in its other parts.*

GENITIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

224. The object remembered or forgotten is with verbs in the genitive or accusative, with adjectives in the genitive—

Ciceronem memini. *I recollect Cicero.*

Contumeliæ obliviscitur. *He forgets the affront.*

Memor beneficiorum, fraudis ignarus. *Mindful of favours, unconscious of guile.*

GENITIVE.

225.—(1) The object felt for is in the genitive—

Miserere nostri. *Pity us.*

(2) Impersonal verbs of feeling take an accusative of the person feeling, and genitive of the object felt for—

Miseret me tui. *I pity you.*

Pœnitet eum peccati. *He repents of his sin.*

226. (1) **Rēfert** and **interest** take a possessive genitive—

Refert patris. *It concerns my father's weal.*

Interest omnium. *It is the interest of all.*

(2) With **refert** and **interest**, instead of the genitive of pronouns, the possessive forms **meā**, **tuā**, **suā**, **nostrā**, and **vestrā** are used.

223a. Accusatives of definition are such as the following—

Non **omnia** possumus. *We cannot do everything.*

Maximam partem lacte vivunt. *They live mostly on milk.*

Aliquid **id genus**. *Something of that sort.*

224a. (1) The verbs taking gen. or acc. are **memini**, **reminiscor**, and **obliviscor**. **Recordor** takes the acc., rarely the gen.

(2) The acc. refers to *actual remembrance*, the gen. to a *state of mind* (being mindful).

N.B.—Compare verbs of the feelings.

Compare also Shakespeare's "Your majesties is remembered *of it*"; and, "If you bethink yourself *of any crime*."

(3) By this rule are explained such constructions as—

Venit mihi **Platonis** in mentem. *I think of Plato.*

Me **sui consilii** certiore fecit. *He informed me of his plan.*

225a. The impersonals taking acc. and gen. are **miseret**, **pænitet**, **pudet**, **tædet**, and **piget**.

226a. (1) Distinguish the impersonal **rēfert** from **rēfert** (3d sing. of **rēfero**).

(2) The possessives may be considered to be fem. ablatives qualifying **re** (abl. of **res**), contained in **refert** and implied in **interest**, thus—

Mea refert = fert **re** mea. *It has a bearing in my business.*

Nostra interest = interest (**re**) nostra. *It is important in our business.*

(3) When a pronoun is qualified by an adjective, the gen. construction must be used—

Nostrum omnium refert. *It concerns all of us.*

DATIVE.—INDIRECT OBJECT.

* * The dative is the case of the indirect object.

The indirect object denotes the term to which something has reference.

There are two classes of such datives—

I. The dative of the thing concerned, or in regard of which a statement is true.

II. The dative of the result which something tends to effect.

I. Dative of the Thing Concerned.

227. Words implying advantage or disadvantage take a dative of the thing affected—

Est mihi liber. *I have a book.*

Tibi arantur agri. *Fields are tilled for your benefit.*

Agros dat plebi. *He gives the people land.*

Narras fabulam surdo. *You tell a story to a deaf man.*

Agno crus fregit. *He broke the lamb's leg.*

228. (1) A dative limits the reference of another word to a particular object—

Illis clarus. *Illustrious in their eyes.*

Mihi deus erit. *For me he will be a god.*

Congruenter naturæ. *Agreeably to nature.*

Mihi esurio non tibi. *My hunger affects not you, but me.*

(2) The ethical dative of a pronoun thrown into a sentence indicates the person interested—

Quid mihi Celsus agit. *What is Celsus doing, I pray?*

At tibi venit ad me. *But, if you please, he came to me.*

Hei mihi. *Ah! dear me.*

229. The dative with gerunds, gerundives, and verbals in -bilis, denotes the person upon whom a duty or obligation falls—

Moriendum est omnibus. *All must die.*

Hæc sunt gerenda mihi. *I must do this.*

Vir mihi flebilis. *A man to be mourned by me.*

* * **Dative.** All cases of remote object *of the thing concerned* are included under the idea of advantage and disadvantage, taken to include *possession, likeness, and nearness, and their contraries.*

227a. (1) Many verbs translated by transitives in English have in Latin a trajective force—

noceo, *I do harm = I injure.*

parco, *I show mercy = I spare.*

The true meaning of such verbs must be carefully observed.

(2) Many verbs acquire by composition a meaning which makes them trajective. Prepositions frequently introduce such meaning; also such adverbs as **bene** (*well*) and **male** (*ill*). Thus—

sto = *I stand*

obsto = *I stand in the way (I resist).*

facio = *I make*

benefacio = *I do good (I benefit).*

(3) Trajectives cannot be used personally in the passive [vid. sup. 205].

(4) **Sum** in its compounds, except **possum**, acquires a trajective force—

obsum = *I am prejudicial*

desum = *I am wanting.*

(5) Some verbs of giving admit a double construction—

Prædam donat **militibus**. *He gives the soldiers booty.*

Prædā donat **milites**. *He presents the soldiers with booty.*

228a. **Ethical dative.** Compare Shakespeare's "Heat *me* these irons hot." "He presently steps *me* a little higher."

229a. (1) The idea of duty or obligation comes from the *predication*, not from the nature of the gerund or gerundive, which by itself has no such force.

(2) A gerund should not be used transitively as the subject of a verb. The gerundive should be employed in its stead.

Æternas pœnas in morte timendum est. *We have eternal pains to fear in death—*

is too rare a usage to imitate. The ordinary form would be—

Æternæ pœnæ timendæ sunt.

230. With passive verbs, chiefly in compound tenses, the dative denotes the agent to whom an action is ascribed—

Hæc sunt gesta mihi. *I did this.*

231. Verbs implying likeness or unlikeness take the dative of the object with which comparison is made; adjectives the dative or genitive—

Homero compāro Virgilium. *I compare Virgil to Homer.*

Tibi similis. *Like you.*

Tui similis. *The like of you.*

232. Words expressing nearness take the dative of the term referred to—

Urbi appropinquat. *He draws near the city.*

Proximus oceano. *Nearest to the ocean.*

II. Dative of Result.

233. An effect resulting or intended is expressed by the dative—

Receptui cecinit. *He sounded a retreat.*

Comitia consulibus creandis. *A consular election.*

Non est solvendo. *He is unable to pay.*

III. Double Dative of Thing concerned and Result.

234. With esse, and other verbs, two datives may be used showing upon whom and to what effect a cause tends to operate—

Est mihi damno. *It is a loss to me.*

Tibi laudi datur. *It is assigned to your credit.*

Cui bono? *To whose advantage?*

COMPARISON.

* * Quam = *than*.

235. After a comparative adjective, if Quam be expressed, the things compared agree in case—

230a. A dative of the agent after trajectives is too rare and too awkward to imitate. The ablative with a preposition should be substituted. Thus, not—

Hæc sunt **mihi** tibi præstanda, but— } *This must I do*
 Hæc sunt **a me** tibi præstanda. } *for you.*

231a. The dative of likeness with adjectives is mostly confined to outward feature. The gen. denotes also resemblance of character. Compare “like Cæsar” and “the like of Cæsar.”

232a. Note the construction **prope ad se, prope ab domo, prope oppidum**, and compare with the more common **propior mihi, proximus tibi, propior mare, proximus mare**, which are also used. Compare also Shakespeare’s “arrived our coast” (3 Hen. VI., v. 3. 8).

233a. For the dative of the result, a preposition with the accusative is more frequently used—

Aptus ad solvendum. *Able to pay.*

N.B.—Some verbs take accusative or dative with difference of meaning according to case-notion—

Cavere	{	aliquem.	<i>To guard against some one.</i>
		alicui.	<i>To take precautions for him.</i>
Consulere	{	aliquem.	<i>To consult him.</i>
		alicui.	<i>To consult for him.</i>

235a. } (1) In expressions of number and quality, **quam** is often understood with **plus, minus, amplius, and longius**—

236a. } *Tecum plus annum vixit.* *He lived with you above a year.*
Minus duo millia. *Less than two thousand.*

(2) *Rare constructions.* (a) Instead of the ablative, a preposition with its case is sometimes used—

Ante alios immanior. *More monstrous than the rest.*

(b) **Alius** = *other than*, sometimes takes the ablative—

Alius sapiente. *Other than wise.*

(3) **Note** that the ablative can be used only for the thing *on which the comparison falls.*

Thus, in “You have a bigger horse than I,” comparison falls not on me, but on my horse.

Therefore in Latin—

Est tibi equus major **quam mihi** or equus **meo major** :
me major would mean that *the horse* was bigger than I.

Ciceronem doctiorem judico quam **Demosthenem**. *I consider Cicero more learned than Demosthenes.*

Hibernia minor est quam **Britannia**. *Ireland is smaller than Britain.*

Agris quam **urbi** terribilior. *More dreadful to the country than the town.*

236. When **quam** is omitted comparatives take the ablative—

Vilius argentum est **auro**, virtutibus **aurum**. *Silver is worth less than gold, gold than virtue.*

237. **Quam** may be omitted only when the things compared are in the nominative or accusative.

238. SYNOPSIS OF CASE USES.

Nominative—

Subject—**Redit Cæsar**.

Predicate—**Redit Cæsar victor**.

Accusative—

Direct Object—**Vicit Gallos**.

Predicate of Object—**Fecit Gallos subditos**.

Second Object—**Docuit pueros grammaticam**.

Term of Motion—**Rediit Romam**. **Abiit pugnatum**.

Extent (of Space)—**Tres pedes alta**. **Os deo similis**.

„ (of Time)—**Vixit multos annos**.

Cognate—**Cursum cucurri**.

Dative—

Thing concerned—**Est mihi liber**. **Datur mihi**. **Narratur mihi**. **Mihi similis**. **Mihi proximus**. **Mihi clarus**. **Moriendum est mihi**. **Hæc mihi gesta sunt**. **Quid mihi Celsus agit?**

Result—**Comitia consulibus creandis**. **Receptui cecinit**.

Thing concerned and result—**Est mihi damno**. **Subsidio castris**.

Genitive—

Possessive—(*Attribute*) Amicus est **Cæsar**is. Amicus fit **Cæsar**is.

(*Predicate*) Omnia sunt **Cæsar**is.

Of Definition—Primus **Romanorum**. Arguit furti. Dives opum. Æstimo magni. Miseret me tui. Peccati oblitus.

Ablative—

{ **Descriptive—**Vir summæ virtutis. } Ager quadraginta jugerum.
 { **Descriptive—**Vir summa virtute. }

Cause, Manner, and Instrument—Metu pallet. Dimidio major. Calce ferit. Utitur baculo.

Source and Separation—Ortus regibus. Patria ejectus.

Price and Worth—Laude dignus. Docuit talento.

Time when or within which—Hora tertia. Tribus horis.

Comparison—Cæsare minor.

Absolute—Consule Planco.

Locative—

Place where—Vixit Romæ. Domi mortuus.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

* * Verbs may be constructed—

(1) With **no subject**.

(2) With a **non-personal subject**.

The former are alone truly **impersonal**. They are used only in the 3d pers. sing. of the finite verb and in the infinitive.

Verbs with a non-personal subject are *quasi impersonals*. They may be used in the 3d pers. sing. or plur.

Many verbs are used personally in one sense and as *quasi impersonals* in another.

ACTIVE IMPERSONALS.

239. The verbs of feeling, *miseret*, *pænitet*, *tædet*, *piget*, and *pudet*, are used impersonally—

Miseret me tui. I pity you.

Pænitet eum peccati. He repents of his sin.

240. Verbs expressing certain natural phenomena, the author whereof is not known, are used impersonally—

Fulminat. It thunders.

Lapidibus pluit. It rains stones.

PASSIVE IMPERSONALS.

241. Verbs with no direct object in the active must be used impersonally in the passive—

Tibi nocetur. You are injured.

Ventum erat ad Vestæ. We had come to the temple of Vesta.

242. *Quasi* impersonals may have any but a living subject—

Illud non licet. That is not lawful.

Ludere oportet. It is needful to play.

Cæsarem adesse constat. It is certain that Cæsar is at hand.

Te citharæ decent. The harp is suitable to you.

SYNTAX OF MOODS.

* * Distinguish a **clause** containing subject and predicate from a **phrase** containing none.

PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS.

243. The principal verb in a sentence is that which utters the statement, question, or command to which all other parts are attached.

239a. No author can be assigned to spontaneous emotions. Hence the impersonal use of these verbs.

240a. In vivid language, especially in poetry, the phenomena are assigned to an author, and the verbs are then used personally—

Pluit **Jupiter**. *Jove sends down the rain.*

Euri tonat **domus**. *The eastern heavens thunder.*

(Compare “He rains on the just and the unjust.”)

241a. (1) The subject is contained in the verb itself—

Ventum erat = *there was a coming, having come.*

(2) This impersonal usage occurs in the so-called future infinitive passive, **iri** being used impersonally with the supine in **-um**—

Dico epistolam **scriptum iri**. *I say that there is a movement towards writing a letter.*

(Notes continued on p. 139.)

244. The speaker is the person whose statement, question, or command is uttered by the principal verb, as—

“The boy stood on the burning deck.” *Speaker, the author of the piece.*

“Father! must I stay?” *Speaker, the boy.*

“The boy, O! where was he?” *Speaker, the author.*

“Say, father, say.” *Speaker, the boy.*

245. A direct statement, question, or command is one uttered by the speaker, or reported by him in the form in which it was uttered, as—

He said, “*The boy stood.*”

He cried, “*Must I stay?*”

He cried, “*Say, father, say.*”

246. An oblique statement, question, or command is one the principal verb of which is made subordinate, as—

He said *that the boy stood.*

He asked *if he must stay.*

He begged *his father to say.*

MOOD NOTIONS.

247. The indicative asserts on the authority of the speaker the existence of a fact, or asks what the fact is—

Cæsar vicit Gallos. *Cæsar conquered the Gauls.*

Vicitne Gallos Cæsar? *Did Cæsar conquer the Gauls?*

248. The imperative conveys a direct command—

Aut disce aut discede. *Either learn or go.*

249.—(I) The subjunctive exhibits an idea entertained or expressed—

Utinam vicisset Gallos. *Would that he had conquered the Gauls.*

Vicerit Gallos. *Suppose him to conquer the Gauls.*

Vicisset Gallos. *He might have conquered the Gauls.*

(2) Or the substance of a question stated obliquely—

Quis vicerit ambigitur. *Who has conquered is uncertain.*

250.—(1) The infinitive without a subject is used as a noun or as the complement of a verb—

Ludere juvat. *Playing is pleasant.*

Cogor abire. *I am forced to go.*

(2) With a subject it exhibits the substance of a fact stated obliquely—

Sese subegisse Gallos. (What he said was) *that he had conquered the Gauls.*

TENSE NOTIONS.

251. When one verb depends upon another, their tenses must both be primary or both historic.

* * The infinitive mood uses the same form in primary and historic constructions.

The *present* (or *incomplete*) denotes an action accompanying that of the principal verb, whether that verb be primary or historic—

Dico illum abire. *I say that he is departing.*

Dicebam illum abire. *I said that he was departing.*

The *perfect* (or *complete*) denotes an action preceding that of the principal verb—

Dico illum abiisse. *I say that he has departed.*

Dixi illum abiisse. *I said that he had departed.*

The *future* (or *prospective*) denotes an action following that of the principal verb—

Dico illum abiturum esse. *I say that he will depart.*

Dixi illum abiturum esse. *I said that he would depart.*

252. The tense of the dependent verb must show whether the action it expresses precedes, accompanies, or follows that of the principal verb.

EXAMPLES OF TENSE SEQUENCE.

(1) Infinitive—

(i) *Primary Tenses.*

Audivi illum	ægrotare.	<i>I have heard that he is ill.</i>
„ „	ægrotasse.	„ „ has been <i>ill</i> .
„ „	ægrotaturum esse.	„ „ is going to be <i>ill</i> .
Audio illum	ægrotare.	<i>I hear that he is ill.</i>
„ „	ægrotasse.	„ „ has been <i>ill</i> .
„ „	ægrotaturum esse.	„ „ is going to be <i>ill</i> .
Audiam illum	ægrotare.	<i>I shall hear that he is ill.</i>
„ „	ægrotasse.	„ „ has been <i>ill</i> .
„ „	ægrotaturum esse.	„ „ is going to be <i>ill</i> .
Audivero illum	ægrotare.	<i>I shall have heard that he is ill.</i>
„ „	ægrotasse.	„ „ has been <i>ill</i> .
„ „	ægrotaturum esse.	„ „ is going to be <i>ill</i> .

(ii) *Historic Tenses.*

Audiveram illum	ægrotare.	<i>I had heard that he was ill.</i>
„ „	ægrotasse.	„ „ had been <i>ill</i> .
„ „	ægrotaturum esse.	„ „ was going to be <i>ill</i> .
Audiebam illum	ægrotare.	<i>I kept hearing that he was ill.</i>
„ „	ægrotasse.	„ „ had been <i>ill</i> .
„ „	ægrotaturum esse.	„ „ was going to be <i>ill</i> .
Audivi illum	ægrotare.	<i>I heard that he was ill.</i>
„ „	ægrotasse.	„ „ had been <i>ill</i> .
„ „	ægrotaturum esse.	„ „ was going to be <i>ill</i> .

(2) Subjunctive—

(i) *Primary Tenses.*

Rogavi num	ægrotet.	<i>I have asked if he is ill.</i>
„ „	ægrotarit.	„ „ has been <i>ill</i> .
„ „	ægrotaturus sit.	„ „ is going to be <i>ill</i> .
Rogo num	ægrotet.	<i>I ask if he is ill.</i>
„ „	ægrotarit.	„ „ has been <i>ill</i> .
„ „	ægrotaturus sit.	„ „ is going to be <i>ill</i> .
Rogabo num	ægrotet.	<i>I shall ask if he is ill.</i>
„ „	ægrotarit.	„ „ has been <i>ill</i> .
„ „	ægrotaturus sit.	„ „ is going to be <i>ill</i> .
Rogavero num	ægrotet.	<i>I shall have asked if he is ill.</i>
„ „	ægrotarit.	„ „ has been <i>ill</i> .
„ „	ægrotaturus sit.	„ „ is going to be <i>ill</i> .

(ii) *Historic Tenses.*

Rogaveram	num	ægrotaret.	<i>I had asked if he</i>	was ill.
„	„	ægrotasset.	„ „	had been ill.
„	„	ægrotaturus esset.	„	was going to be ill.
Rogabam	num	ægrotaret.	<i>I kept asking if he</i>	was ill.
„	„	ægrotasset.	„ „	had been ill.
„	„	ægrotaturus esset.	„	was going to be ill.
Rogavi	num	ægrotaret.	<i>I asked if he</i>	was ill.
„	„	ægrotasset.	„	had been ill.
„	„	ægrotaturus esset.	„	was going to be ill.

SYNTAX OF THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF CLAUSES.

Noun Clauses.

253. A clause used as a noun may be—

- An infinitive clause.
- An interrogative clause.
- A quod clause.

Infinitive Clauses.

254.—(1) An infinitive clause contains the fact which is obliquely stated or asked about.

(2) A statement or question is oblique which passes from principal to dependent verb through no interrogative.

(3) The verb of such clause is infinitive, and its subject accusative—

Hæc scio scripsisse Cæsarem. I know Caesar wrote this.
Quid dicis scripsisse Cæsarem? What do you say Caesar wrote?

Quem dicis hæc scripsisse. Who do you say wrote this?
Quo pretio credis veniturum esse triticum? At what price do you think wheat will be sold?

255. An infinitive clause is the subject or object of a verb.

N.B.—Verbs *sentiendi et declarandi* take an infinitive clause as object.

The passives of such, with verbs of *being* and *seeming*, take one as subject—

Sentio ita esse. *I feel it is so.*

Sic esse dicitur. *It is said that it is so.*

Sic esse patet. *It is evident it is so.*

Interrogative Clauses.

256.—(1) An interrogative clause denotes the point on which an indirect statement is made or question asked.

(2) A statement or question is indirect which passes from principal to dependent verb through an interrogative.

(3) The verb of an interrogative clause is subjunctive—

Dico quid sentiam. *I tell you what I think.*

Rogo quid sentias. *I ask what you think.*

Scisne quo pretio veniturum sit triticum? *Do you know at what price wheat will be sold?*

Utrum Cæsar scripserit quæritur. *Whether Cæsar wrote it is a question.*

257. Note on oblique and indirect construction.

In oblique construction a fact is presented by means of two verbs, saying not how it is, but how some one thinks or says it is.

The thing treated of is the verbal fact contained in the subordinate verb, which is therefore treated as a noun, and put in its noun form, the infinitive.

In indirect speech, not the fact itself, but some point regarding it, is spoken of. This point is indicated by the interrogative, on which, and not on the verb, the force of the statement or question falls. The verb consequently is not treated as a noun.

253a. Clauses introduced by **ut** or **ne**, though often appearing to be noun clauses, are adverbial. They represent the scope intended or supposed—*i.e.*, the purpose or consequence of an action.

254a. (1) Commands are generally expressed by means of **ut** and **ne**, not obliquely.

Jubeo (*I bid*) and **prohibeo** (*I forbid*), and a few other verbs, may take an infinitive clause, but they also take clauses with **ut** or **ne** [see 277a, 2].

(2) An infinitive clause seldom stands for any case but the nominative and accusative, but it may do so—

Audito **Darĭum fugisse**. *The flight of Darius being learnt.*

(3) With passives *sentiendi et declarandi* the personal construction is generally used—

Dicitur **Cæsar** (not **Cæsarem**) adesse. *Cæsar is said to be at hand.* (It is said he is at hand.)

(4) With copulative infinitives the accusative subject may be omitted when it belongs to the only person who has been named. Predicate nouns and adjectives then agree with the word which has named that person—

Nolo esse **longus** (me esse longum). *I do not wish to be prolix.*

Antonius cupit **consul** fieri (se consulem fieri). *Antony wishes to become consul.*

Licet illis esse **beatis** (ipsos esse beatos). *They have the power to be happy.*

(5) **Inquam** (*say I*) does not take an infinitive clause, but is thrown into a sentence without affecting the construction—

Domum, inquit, redibo. *I will go home, quoth he.*

(6) A subjunctive of *direct statement* is turned to the periphrastic infinitive, or a modal infinitive—

Troja **staret**. *Troy might be standing* = Trojam **stare potuisse**.

Hoc **facerem**. *I should do this* = sese hoc **esse facturum**.

(7) **Historic Infinitive**. When a speaker's object is to depict rather than describe what happens, the infinitive is used like a finite verb without any other change in the sentence—

258. An **oblique statement** is a *statement* of a *statement*.
 An **oblique question** is a *question* about a *statement*.
 An **indirect statement** is a *statement* about a *question*.
 An **indirect question** is a *question* about a *question*.

259. Note on questions **Direct and Oblique**.

Direct and oblique questions are introduced—

- (1) By interrogative adjectives or adverbs—

Quis es?	Unde venis?	Valesne ?
<i>Who are you?</i>	<i>Whence come you?</i>	<i>How do you do?</i>

Or without an interrogative—

Credis? *Do you believe it?*

N.B.—When the answer *yes* is anticipated, **nonne** is used—

Nonne credis? *You believe, don't you?*

When the answer *no* is anticipated, **num** is used—

Num credis? *You don't believe, do you?*

When no answer is indicated, **an** or the enclitic **-ne** is used.

- (2) **Disjunctive questions** (presenting two or more alternatives, whereof only one can be affirmatively answered) are introduced by **utrum**, **num**, or **-ne**, and **an** or **an non**—

Utrum credis **an non**? *Do you believe or not?*

Credisne an dubitas? *Do you believe or doubt?*

260. Note on the indirect use of interrogatives.

The same interrogatives are used in indirect speech, but—

- (1) **Num** does not require a negative answer.

- (2) **Necne** is used for **an non**, as—

Utrum credas necne nihil interest. It makes no matter whether you believe or no.

Hæc quum dixisset me **omnes intueri**. *When he had said this, all looked at me.* (“There was a unanimous gaze.”)

Tum **cælum strepere, micare flammæ, viri pavescere**. *Then the heavens crashed, lightnings flashed, all were panic-stricken.* (“Then crashes of thunder, flashes of lightning, universal panic.”)

Omnia in pejus ruere ac retro sublapsa referri. *Things ever deteriorate and fall away.* (“Perpetual ruin and relapse.”)

N.B.—(1) The infinitive represents the essence of the verbal action, which alone the speaker seeks to convey, omitting adjuncts of time, person, and number.

N.B.—(2) Akin to this is the omission of **sum** before predicates—

Facies totius negotii incerta fœda ac miserabilis. *The whole situation (was) bewildering, shocking, and wretched.*

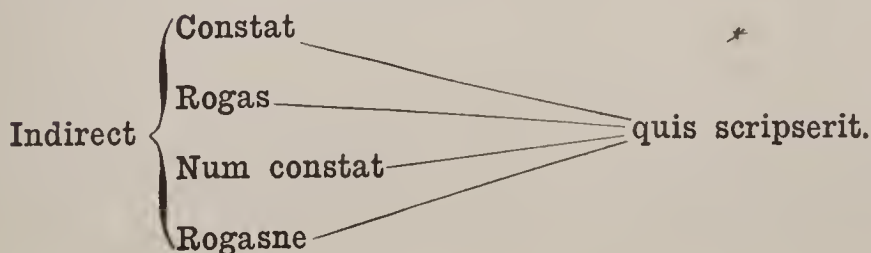
N.B.—(3) The historic infinitive is generally used for the imperfect indicative.

256a. An indirect clause usually stands as a noun in the nominative or accusative ; but it may stand in any case.

257a. (1) Statement. “**Hæc scripsit Cæsar.**”



(2) Question. “**Quis scripsit ?**”



N.B.—**Utrum**, **num**, **-ne**, and **an**, being interrogatives, always introduce **noun** clauses, and must be distinguished from other words translated by *whether* and *or*, which are not interrogative, and therefore introduce **adverb** clauses.

Quod Clauses.

261.—(1) A clause introduced by **quod** (= "the fact that") presents a fact as bearing on something else.

(2) A **quod** clause is in apposition to a noun or demonstrative expressed or not—

Quod venisti jucundum est ; *or*, **Hoc** jucundum est, **quod venisti**. *Your having come is pleasant.*

De hoc gaudeo, **quod venisti**. *I rejoice at your having come.*

Quid quod patriam vendidit? *What of the fact that he sold his country?*

Adjective Clauses.

262. Adjective clauses are introduced by a relative adjective or by a relative adverb which is equivalent to one—

Vir quem vidi. *The man whom I saw.*

Talis est qualis semper fuit. *He is such as he ever was.*

Agri ubi habitant. *The fields in which they dwell.*

N.B.—The relative **qui** used **demonstratively**, or to express purpose, does not introduce an adjective clause. (262a.)

Adverb Clauses.

263. All clauses except infinitive, interrogative, **quod**, and relative clauses, are adverbial.

261a. (1) Quod clauses introduce a thing in actual fact, or if they occur in oratio obliqua, as alleged fact.

(2) They may be in apposition to words in any case.

262a. (1) A relative adverb is equivalent to the adjective when it stands for the adjective in an oblique case (with or without a preposition)—

Agri **ubi** = agri **in quibus**.

Tempus **quum** (*the time when*) = tempus **quo** (*the time in which*).

(2) (i) The relative **qui** is used **demonstratively** when = a **demonstrative + a conjunction**—

{ Qui et ille }	his dictis tacuit	} and <i>having said this, he</i> <i>ceased.</i>
{ Quæ et hæc }	quum dixisset tacuit	
{ Quibus et his }	dictis tacuit	

N.B.—In such cases the clause is **co-ordinate**, not **sub-ordinate**.

(ii) The relative is used **of purpose** when = a **demonstrative + an adverb**—

Arma comparavi { quibus
ut iis } patriam defendam. *I have*
procured arms wherewith to defend my native land.

N.B.—In such cases the clause is **adverbial**, as *qualifying the verb*.

(iii) The relative is also used **of result**. It is then = an **adjective of quality or quantity + an adverb** (*talis ut, tantus ut, &c.*), or has for its antecedent an adjective, not a noun—

Is est vir { qui
talis ut } omnia possit. *He is a man who*
could do anything.

Nulla vis tanta est { quæ
ut } penetrare in cælum possit.
No strength is so great that it can reach heaven.

Indignus est { qui
ut } hoc impetret. *He is unworthy to*
obtain this.

N.B.—Such clauses, though *grammatically adjectival*, are in force **adverbial**, as they *qualify the adjective* (cf. 209a, * * iii.)

264. Adverb clauses are introduced by connective adverbs, or by words equivalent to them—

Hæc dum geruntur urbs capta est. *While this is going on the town is taken.*

Operam dabo ut doctus fiam. *I will strive to become learned.*

Quum clemens esset hostibus pepercit. *He spared the enemy as he was merciful.*

Dives ut metiretur nummos. *So rich as to measure his money.*

Facere non possum quin scribam. *I cannot but write.*

Perge ut instituisti. *Go on as you have begun.*

Cave ne facias. *Take care not to do it.*

N.B.—Distinguish connective adverbs from conjunctions. Conjunctions connect not things but words,—names with names, sentences with sentences, or parts of sentences with like parts.

Connective adverbs, besides qualifying a word in their own clause, connect that clause with another. Therefore *ut*, *quum*, *dum*, *ubi*, *si*, *quia*, and the like, are adverbs.

MOOD OF DEPENDENT VERBS.

Noun Clauses. 1. Infinitive and Interrogative Clauses.

265. All finite verbs forming part of an oblique statement or question, or an indirect statement or question, are subjunctive—

Dicit Caius fratrem ægrotare quem amet. *Caius says that the brother he loves is sick.*

266. According as the principal verb is in a primary or historic tense, that of the infinitive and subjunctive is primary or historic—

Dixit Caius fratrem quem amaret ægrotare. (Preterite.)
Caius said that the brother he loved was sick.

Dixit mihi modo fratrem quem amet ægrotare. (Perfect.)
He has just told me that the brother he loves is sick.

264a. Connective adverbs are old case forms of demonstratives or relatives—

ut for **quoti** (**ti** = a locative ending).

si for **sei** (Cf. Greek $\epsilon\iota$).

quum from old relative form **ka** + accusative termination.

tum from old demonstrative (cf. $\tau\acute{o}$) + accusative termination, &c.

265a. “Fratrem quem **amet**.” The statement that he loves him is Caius’s.

Caius says that his brother is sick, and that he loves him.

“Dicit fratrem quem **amat** ægrotare.” The statement that he loves him is not Caius’s but *the speaker’s*—

He says that he loves his brother, which brother, as I know, he loves.

In this case, therefore, the relative clause **does not form part** of the oblique statement.

266a. (1) For the particular tenses to be used in particular cases, vid. sup. 252, 253.

(2) The **indicative**, which makes a statement on its own account, does not depend for its tense on that of the principal verb—

Dicit fratrem quem **amabat** ægrotare. *He says that his brother, whom he used to love, is sick.*

267a. In our own Parliamentary reports important speeches are directly given—

Mr A. said, “Sir, the question is a grave one.”

268a. Less important speeches are reported obliquely—

Mr B., addressing the Speaker, said that the question was a grave one.”

Oblique Narration (*Oratio obliqua*).

- * * From the above rules follow those for language reported obliquely, which differs from ordinary oblique statement only in this, that **all** its parts are necessarily oblique.

267. Reported language is direct if given in the same form in which its author uttered it—

Hæc scripsit Cæsar, “Veni, vidi, vici.” Cæsar wrote thus—“I came, I saw, I conquered.”

268. Language is oblique if placed in a dependent clause—

Scripsit Cæsar se venisse, vidisse, vicisse. Cæsar wrote that he had come, had seen, had conquered.

- * * The following rules relate to the change of **direct** speech to **oblique** :—

269. (i) The 1st and 2d persons belong throughout to the person speaking and spoken to in the principal verb.
- (ii) When (as usually happens) the author of the language reported is neither of these, the 1st and 2d persons of direct speech are replaced in oblique by the 3d.

In such cases—

Se, ipse, and suus *replace words of the 1st person.*

Is, ille, or a noun *those of the 2d person.*

Ille or a noun *those of the 3d person.*

N.B.—(1) **Hic** and **iste** rarely occur in *oratio obliqua*.

(See examples, 269*a*.)

269a. (1) Example of change from direct to oblique narration—

Direct. *The Helvetii speaking to Cæsar—*

“Si pacem Romani nobiscum fecerint in eam partem ibimus, atque ibi erimus, ubi tu nos constitueris, atque esse volueris.” *If the Romans shall make peace with us, we will go and stay wherever you shall appoint and wish us to be.*

Cæsar reporting this in his own person—

(Hæc fuit eorum oratio.) Si pacem Romani cum ipsis facerent, in eam partem sese ituros atque ibi futuros ubi ego eos constituerem atque esse vellem.

The Helvetii reporting it to their own people—

(Hæc fuit nostra oratio.) Si pacem Romani nobiscum facerent, in eam partem nos ituros atque ibi futuros ubi ille (*or Cæsar*) constitueret atque esse vellet.

Cæsar reporting it as an historian (talking of himself in 3d person—

(Hæc fuit eorum oratio.) Si Romani pacem cum Helvetiis (cum ipsis) facerent, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios ubi eos ille (*or Cæsar*) constitueret atque esse vellet (*or constituisset—voluisset*, according to the sense to be conveyed).

- (2) As to the pronouns to be used, no absolute rule is possible, but no room must be left for ambiguity.

N.B.—The use of **ipse** in such cases is twofold—

- (i) Qualifying the subject of a clause in which a reflexive occurs, it refers the reflexive to that subject instead of the principal subject—

Natura omnes movet ut se diligant. *Nature prompts all to love her.*

But—

Natura omnes movet ut se **ipsi** diligant = *to love themselves.*

- (ii) It stands for the principal subject when **se** (*or suus*) refers to the subject of a clause—

Cæsar quæsit quid de **sua** virtute aut de **ipsius** diligentia desperarent. *Cæsar asked why they distrusted either their own valour or his vigilance.*

N.B.—(2) **Hic** and **iste** are the demonstratives of the 1st and 2d persons, and as these persons occur rarely in oratio obliqua, their demonstratives occur rarely.

Questions in Oratio obliqua.

270. Questions asked in the 2d person are, in general, obliquely expressed by the subjunctive; those of the 1st and 3d persons usually by the infinitive—

Quid moramur nos? Vos quid vultis? hostes quid expectant?

Why are we delaying? What do you want? or the enemy wait for?

Obliquely—

Ipsos quid morari? Illi quid vellent? hostes quid expectare?

Commands in Oratio obliqua.

271. The imperative of direct speech becomes subjunctive in oblique—

Hoc facite si salvi esse vultis. *Do this if you would be saved.*

Obliquely—

Hoc faciant si salvi esse velint. } According to tense of
Hoc facerent si salvi esse vellent. } principal verb.

2. Quod Clause.

272. The verb of a quod clause is indicative, unless the clause occurs in oblique narration—

De hoc gaudeo quod venisti. *I rejoice at your having come.*

But—

Dixit se de hoc gaudere quod venisset ille.

(3) As the principal verb introducing oratio obliqua is usually in a past tense, historical tenses of the subjunctive (and infinitive) usually occur.

(4) Infinitives of direct speech remain infinitive in oblique—

Censeo **delendam** esse Carthaginem. *I think Carthage should be destroyed.*

Dixit Cato censere se **delendam** esse Carthaginem.

(5) All other dependent verbs are subjunctive. This follows from the fact that they are all oblique (268 * *).

270a. (1) Questions asked for the purpose of getting an answer are turned by the subjunctive. As a rule, only questions of the 2d person are so asked. They are therefore expressed according to the ordinary manner of indirect questions. Questions of the 1st or 3d person similarly asked would be similarly turned.

In general, however, 1st and 2d person questions are rhetorical, and are merely a vivid way of expressing an opinion. Thus—

Why do we delay? = let us go on.

What are they waiting for? = there is nothing for them to wait for.

(2) The infinitive of rhetorical question or exclamation occurs also in direct speech (oratio recta)—

Mene incepto **desistere** victam? *Am I forsooth to give up beaten?*

Me te servare non **potuisse**! *To think that I could not save you!*

MOODS IN ADJECTIVE AND ADVERB CLAUSES.

273. When two finite verbs are connected by a relative or by a connective adverb, if in the second an idea be expressed and not a fact, that verb must be subjunctive.

N.B.—(1) Something in fact true may be expressed as an idea, if the speaker does not *in his statement* vouch for it as a fact.

N.B.—(2) All finite verbs in clauses belonging to oblique or indirect narration must be subjunctive, their statement resting on the authority of the person reported, not of the speaker. Even when a speaker reports himself, his reported statement is treated in this respect as if it were another's.

N.B.—(3) In direct speech dependent subjunctives fall under three heads:—

(a) Expressing the mind of the **speaker**, viz.:—

The **cause** to which *he attributes* some act.

The **consequence** which *he attributes* to some act or some quality.

(b) Expressing the mind of the **subject** of the principal verb (the *person spoken of*), viz.:—

The **motive** from which he acts.

The **purpose** for which he acts.

The object of his **fear**.

(c) Relative clauses describing something **indefinitely**—*i.e.*, in terms so general that the mind of the person *spoken to* is left to particularise and apply them, viz.:—

Qui denoting a class or type.

Quum denoting a rolling moment of time (284).

275a. **Consequence** is expressed with **ut** and **ut non** (**ut nemo**, **ut nunquam**, &c.)—

Talis erat **ut** ei **non** crederetur. *He was such that none believed him.*

276a. (1) Distinguish from the motive on which the agent acts a statement of fact made by the speaker or writer from which a conclusion follows—

Brutus Cæsarem jure occidit quoniam tyrannus erat.
Brutus slew Caesar rightly, as he was a tyrant.

(2) **Quod** (not **quia**) with the subjunctive is used after verbs of *praise, blame, complaint, surprise*, &c., signifying the ground alleged.

N.B.—**Quod** sometimes takes subjunctive of a verb *sentienti* or *declarandi*, when the subjunctive force falls not on this verb but on the infinitive which follows—

In castra rediit quod se oblitum nescio quid **diceret**. *He returned to the camp because, as he alleged, he had forgotten something.*

277a. (1) **Purpose** is expressed with **ut** and **ne**—

Cura **ut** valeas. *Take care of your health.*

Cave **ne** feceris. *Take care not to do it.*

(i) **Ut** or **ne** is frequently omitted—

Cura valeas. Cave feceris.

(ii) For *et ne*, **neu** is used.

(2) Verbs signifying to **ask, command, advise**, and **strive** (*monendi et imperandi*) take a purpose clause with **ut** or **ne** in place of English infinitive—

Imperat **ut** eant. *He orders them to go.*

Monet **ne** faciant. *He warns them not to do it.*

N.B.—(i) These verbs, as a rule, do not take an accusative of the person ordered with the infinitive, but they may take an accusative of the thing with a passive infinitive—

Frumentum comparari imperat. *He orders corn to be got ready.*

(ii) **Conor**, to strive, is a modal verb taking infinitive complement—

Conor abire. *I strive to go away.*

(iii) Several verbs are used as verbs of commanding, &c.,

274. Cause is expressed by the subjunctive with an adverb—

Quum clemens esset hostibus pepercit. *He spared the enemy, as he was merciful.*

275. Consequence is expressed by the subjunctive with the relative or an adverb—

Sequitur ut falsum sit. *It follows that it is false.*

Fabula digna quæ legatur. *A story worthy of being read.*

276. Motive is expressed by the subjunctive with an adverb—

Brutus Cæsarem occidit quod tyrannum esset. *Brutus slew Cæsar as being a tyrant.*

277. Purpose is expressed by the subjunctive with the relative or an adverb—

Misit legatos {qui
ut} pacem peterent. *He sent envoys to ask for peace.*

278. The object of fear is expressed by the subjunctive affirmatively with *ne*, negatively with *ut*—

Vereor ne veniat. *I fear he will come.*

Vereor ut veniat. *I fear he will not come.*

279. The relative takes the subjunctive when it describes a class or type without applying the description to any object in particular—

Sunt qui putent. *There are those who think.*

Nemo est qui non cupiat. *There is none but desires.*

Protasis and Apodosis.

280. When a subordinate proposition must be first thought of, it is called the Protasis, and the principal clause the Apodosis.

with an **ut** clause, or as verbs *declarandi* with infinitive clause—

Moneo **ut** adsis. *I warn you to be present.*

Moneo **adesse** hostes. *I warn you that the enemy is at hand.*

(3) **Ut** has various uses, to be carefully distinguished—

Purpose = *in order that* (subj.)

Consequence = *that, or so that* (subj.)

Comparison = *as* (indic. of facts, subj. for mere supposition; see 282).

Concession = *although* (subj.; see 285).

(4) **Quin** and **quominus** are used of purpose or result—

Quin = **qui** (old abl.) + **ne** = *by which not, that not.*

Quo minus = *by which the less.*

Quin regards only the end, **quominus** the means as well—

Vix fieri potest **quin** veniat. *His coming can scarcely be hindered.*

Hoc obstat **quominus** veniat. *This hinders his coming.*

(i) **Quominus** therefore requires an antecedent expressed or implied.

(ii) The same verb may often be used with either.

(iii) **Quominus** usually, **quin** always, follows a *negative* or *quasi negative* (**vix**, *scarcely*; **ægre**, *with difficulty*, &c.)

282a. (1) The **protasis** = the *if* clause, or *conditioning* clause.

The **apodosis** = the *then*, or *conditioned*, clause.

(2) Conditions are introduced by **si** (*if*), **nisi** (*unless*), **si non** (*if not*), **quod si** (*and if*), **sin** (*but if*), **si minus** (*if otherwise*), **sive** or **seu** (*whether*).

(3) A conditioning clause may be introduced by **qui** = **si quis** (*if any one*)—

Qui hoc fecerit clarus erit. *He who does this shall be famous.*

Qui hoc faciat clarus sit. *Let him who does this be famous.*

(4) A **disjunctive condition** is introduced by **sive**—**sive** (**seu**—**seu**)—

Sive medicum adhibuerit, **sive** non adhibuerit, morietur.
He will die whether he calls in a doctor or not.

Conditional Construction.

281. In a conditional sentence the protasis states a condition, the apodosis its consequence.

282. If the verb of the apodosis be indicative or imperative, stating a fact or a command, that of the protasis is indicative. If the verb of the apodosis be subjunctive, so will be that of the protasis—

Si hoc dicis mentiris. *If (as you do) you say this, you lie.*

Si veneris me videbis. *If you come you will see me.*

Si vis abire abi. *If you wish to go, begone!*

Si hoc dicerem insanirem. *If I said so I should be mad.*

Tu nisi adfuisses de me actum esset. *Had not you been present, it would have been all up with me.*

N.B.—The subjunctive, used with optative or imperative force, sometimes stands in apodosis with indicative protasis—

Ne vivam si scio. *May I die if I know.*

COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

283. Comparative clauses take an indicative of fact or subjunctive of idea—

Perinde ac meritus est pœnas dedit. *He was punished as he deserved.*

Perinde ac si meritus esset pœnas dedit. *He was punished as though he had deserved it.*

TIME CLAUSES (Temporal Clauses).

Quum temporale.

284. *Quum temporale* takes indicative for the exact moment, subjunctive for a rolling moment unspecified in a longer term—

Quum quiescunt probant. *When they hold their peace then they show their approval.*

Quum esset in Gallia bella gessit. *When in Gaul he waged war.*

- (5) **Neither si nor any of its compounds is ever interrogative** (as *si* in French, and *if* or *whether* in English, often are).

The clauses introduced by them are therefore **adverbial, never noun clauses**—

Whether he does it or not he shall die. **Sive** fecerit **sive** non morietur.

But—

Whether he has done it or no I cannot say. **Utrum** fecerit **necne** dicere nequeo.

So—

If you should say so you would lie. **Si** hoc dicas mentiaris.

But—

I ask if you say so. **Num** hoc dicas quæro.

283a. (1) *Indicative construction.*

The *force* of the English tense is to be observed, being often *future when seemingly present*—

If you are diligent you will become learned. **Gnavus si fueris** doctus fies.

(2) *Subjunctive construction.*

Subjunctive tenses are thus used—

Present and **perfect** for an improbable supposition *rhetorically treated as possible*.

Imperfect for what **might** be but is *considered as impossible*.

Pluperfect for that the possibility of which is past and gone.

Si dicam mentiar. *Should I say so, I should tell a lie.*

Si dicerem mentirer. *Were I to say so, I should be mad.*

Si advenissem ille salvus esset. *Had I come up he would now be safe.*

Si advenissem ille salvus fuisset. *Had I come up he would have been saved.*

N.B.—In oblique speech the pluperf. subjunctive is also used to replace the future perfect of direct speech, after a past tense—

Rex præmium proposuit si quis hostem occidisset.
The king promised a reward to any one who should kill an enemy.

After a primary tense the perfect subjunctive would be used—

Rex præmium proponit si quis hostem occiderit.

N.B.—(1) **Quum** (*when*) with present and future verbs commonly denotes *fixed* time, with past verbs commonly time *not fixed*.

Hence with primary tenses it usually takes the indicative, with historic tenses usually the subjunctive.

But the reverse usage follows if the sense be reversed.

Difficile est tacere quum doleas. It is hard to keep silence when in sorrow.

Gladios videbant Decii quum in hostes irruerant. The Decii had swords before their eyes as they rushed on the enemy.

N.B.—(2) **Quum** = *since* (**of time**) takes indicative—

Anni centum sunt quum fuit Dictator. It is a century since there was a Dictator.

N.B.—(3) **Quum causale** (= *since, as, because*) always takes subjunctive according to the general rule of causal clauses (274).

Other Connectives of Time.

285. Connective adverbs of time, except *quum*, take the indicative, unless some other idea than that of time be introduced—

Dum vagantur opprimuntur. While straying they are overwhelmed.

Quamdiu erit hæc urbs. As long as this city lasts.

But—

Multa passus est dum conderet urbem. He suffered much while striving to found the city.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

286. What is allowed as a fact is expressed by the indicative; what is granted for the sake of argument, by the subjunctive. Hence—

N.B.—Such sentences are “virtually oblique,” the apodosis (infinitive clause) being suppressed—

Rex promisit se daturum esse præmium si quis hostem occidisset (= illi qui).

- (3) The **indicative** of **modal** verbs and **periphrastic** tenses frequently has a **subjunctive force**, and is treated as a subjunctive—

Bonus vates esse **poteras** si **voluisses**. *You might have been a good poet if you had chosen.*

Si **veniant** hostes quid **facturi estis**. *If the enemy come what are you thinking of doing?*

- (4) The indicative is occasionally used in apodosis with subjunctive protasis to denote inevitable result—

Perieram nisi tu **accurrisses**. *I had perished if you had not come up.*

N.B.—Πρότασις = a setting before.

Ἀπόδοσις = a giving back.

285a. (1) “When in Gaul he waged war;” “In summer I play cricket,”—does not mean that war or cricket occupy the whole time, day and night. The occasions meant fall somewhere within the limits indicated.

- (2) **Quum**—**tum** (= both—and) are used to compare two statements.

Quum in this connection takes the **indicative** if the statements are *independent* (**co-ordinate**); the **subjunctive** if the first *leads to* the second (and so is **subordinate**)—

Quum te semper **amavi** tum te fidum **cognovi**. *Not only have I ever loved you, but also known you to be true.*

Quum te semper **amaverim** tum hodie plus **amo**. *Having always loved you, I now do so more than ever.*

- (3) **Quum** = *although*, takes subjunctive—

Flumen quum aquas **vehat** ingentes non tamen navium patiens est. *Though the river has an immense volume it is not navigable.*

286a. The ideas beyond that of time which may be attached to these adverbs are generally those of *expectation*, *purpose*, or *watching*.

287a. (1) **Quamvis** = **quam vis** = *as much as you wish, however much*, strictly qualifies adjectives. Hence the subjunctive, as relating to a conception or idea.

Quamvis is often attached to an adjective without a verb—

Quamvis audax. *However bold.*

- (1) **Etsi, tametsi, etiamsi**, may be joined with either mood, like other compounds of **si**—

Etsi hiems **erat** Romam pervenit. *Though it was winter he reached Rome.*

Ego etsi **abessem** me tamen non damnassent. *Though I had been absent they would not have condemned me.*

- (2) **Quanquam** usually takes the **indicative**—

Quanquam **aberam** me damnabant. *Though I was absent they were condemning me.*

- (3) **Quamvis** usually the **subjunctive**—

Quamvis **sit** magnum periculum superabis. *However great the danger, you will escape it.*

- (4) **Licet** always the **subjunctive**—

Licet **impendeant** pericula subibo. *Though dangers threaten I will face them.*

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

Co-ordinate Clauses and Words.

287. Conjunctions couple like cases and moods—

Et vir bonus est et miles fortis. *He is both a good man and a brave soldier.*

Et est, et fuit, et erit. *It is, it was, it will be.*

Legendo vel scribendo doctus fias. *You may become learned either by reading or by writing.*

Scio carum fuisse sed infestum esse factum. *I know that he was dear but has become hateful.*

SYNOPSIS OF MOOD CONSTRUCTIONS.

288. Direct.

Fact.	{	Stated or asked	{	venit venitne? dicunt rogavit	} Indicative.
		Attached to statement	{	...qui vicit Gallos ...ut jam fecerat ...nam tyrannus erat si veneris... quum quiescunt...	

[Synopsis continued on p. 160.]

(2) **Licet** is originally an impersonal verb = *it is granted*.

Licebit, the future, is occasionally used adverbially—

Sis pecore dives licebit. Though you be rich in flocks
(Hor. Epod. xv. 19).

287b. Note on Relative clauses.

From the above rules for dependent constructions follow these for relative clauses (in oratio recta)—

(1) A relative clause which **alleges a reason** for what is said is **subjunctive**. (Purpose, result, mere supposition, 262a (2), ii, iii; 283a.

(2) When it **describes a noun** and does not affect the verbal statement it is **indicative** (unless—which seldom happens—a wish be expressed).

N.B.—In which last case a *principal* verb is subjunctive, 249 (1).

288a. (1) Conjunctions (264 *N.B.*) are—

(a) *Copulative*, **et, atque, ac, -que** = *and*.

(b) *Adversative*, **sed, verum, autem, &c.** = *but*.

(c) *Disjunctive*, **aut, vel, or -ve** = *or*.

(d) *Negative*, **neque (or nec)** = *and not*.

(2) Particularly distinguish—

Disjunctive conjunctions (**aut** and **vel**) which **co-ordinate** clauses.

Disjunctive adverbs (**sive** or **seu**) which introduce **adverb** clauses.

Disjunctive interrogatives { **utrum**
 -ne } which introduce **noun** clauses.

(3) **Aut** and **vel**.

Aut implies objective difference of things.

Vel (from **volo**) that it is matter of choice for the subject.

Aut *calescere* possumus **aut** *refrigerari*. *We may warm ourselves or cool ourselves.*

Calescere possumus **vel** *apricatione* **vel** *igni*. *We may warm ourselves in the sun or at the fire.*

N.B.—**Sive**, compounded of **si** and **vel**, partakes of the nature of the latter.

SYNOPSIS OF MOOD CONSTRUCTIONS—*continued.*

Command.

Uttered ...abi

Imperative.

Idea.	Stated or asked for	fuerit sic velisne? valeas Troja staret Ne feceris	Subjunctive.
Attached to statement	as speaker's explanation	{ ...quum clemens esset ...qui omnia possit si dicerem	Subjunctive.
	as loosely conveyed to hearer	{ sunt qui lugeant ...quum esset in Gallia	
	as agents in this action	{ misit qui dicerent videant ne fecerint interfecit quod tyrannus esset non recusat quin eat	

Notion.

Without statement { me omnes intueri
mene desistere ?

Infinitive.

289. Oratio obliqua.

Cæsar in hunc modum locutus est:—

Direct form.	Statement	Of Fact.	Gallos vici	_____	sese vicisse Gallos.	Oblique form.
		Of Idea.	Romam redirem	_____	Romam se esse rediturum.	
		Of Adjunct	{ ut dixi si possem		quid se agere?	
	Question	Seeking information.	Quid vultis?		ut ante dixisset.	
		Expressing speaker's mind.	Quid ago?		si posset.	
					quid vellent illi?	
Command	.	.	.	Abite!	_____	abirent.

APPENDICES.¹

301. FORM FOR ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

* * *The words are to be kept in the order in which they occur.*

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

1. Make a horizontal line. Write above it the subject or predicate, the other below. Turn the ends of the line towards the predicate.

| Mortuus est |
 rex

 The king
| is dead |

 Alauda
| læta cantat |

 Merrily sings |
 the lark

2. If subject and predicate be intermixed, make a break in the line, and put in the break that which occurs second (always turning the ends of the line from the subject and towards the predicate).

Cato Major
| —hæc dixit— |
| In senatu occubuit |
| —Cæsar— |

Cato, surnamed the Elder,
| —said this— |
| In the senate-house did fall |
| —Cæsar— |

3. Put a + before and after *direct objects*.

Put a * before and after *indirect objects*.

| + Epistolam + * mihi * scripsit |
 Cicero

 Cicero
| has written * me * a + letter + |

| * Tibi * nocet |
 tua stultitia

 Thy folly
| harms + thee + |

Or, Thy folly
| does * thee * + harm + |

¹ The short Prosody (infra, p. 182) is transcribed from 'Excerpta Elegiaca ex Ovidio,' edited by R. P. Georgius Kingdon, S.J. The author's indebtedness elsewhere to such writers as Roby, Kennedy, Madvig, Papillon, and Mason, may be taken for granted.

4. Put in *round brackets* () all enlargements qualifying nouns; in *square brackets* [] all qualifying verbs, adjectives, or adverbs.

A (furious) storm (of wind and rain)

| doth come |

| [In fury] comes [with wind and rain] |
| the storm |

[With (many a weary) step
and

(many a) groan]

+ a (huge) (round) stone +

[up (a high) hill] heaved

| he |

[Inde]

[toro

ab (alto)]

[sic] orsus

| (pater) Æneas |

[Then]

[from (his) (lofty) couch]

did

[thus] begin

| (father) Æneas |

5. To mark the predicate of an object, after a factitive verb, use both a round bracket and a +

| + Cæsarem + + (consulem) + creat |
populus

The people
| makes + Cæsar + + (consul) + |

6. When in Latin the subject is not separately expressed, the person-suffix of the verb should be indicated as the subject.

| + Epistolas + scripsi- + (doctas) + |
-t-

He
| wrote + (learned) letters + |

| Conturbaba- -ur. |
-nt-

They
| were-in-a-state-of-confusion |

N.B.—Vocatives and interjections do not enter into analysis, and are not to be included.

[Quo] + me + Bacche?

| rapi- |
-s

| [Whither] art leading + me, + Bacchus?
thou

COMPLEX SENTENCES.

7. Treat clauses in a complex sentence like words or phrases in a simple sentence, as nouns, adjectives, or adverbs. When a clause is subject of a sentence, or in apposition to the subject, put before and after it a ↓, pointing towards the predicate.

Similarly put a + before and after a clause which is either direct object or in apposition to it.

↓ Cæsarem ↓
| adesse |
| constat |

It¹ | is certain |
↑ that | Caesar | ↑
| is at hand |

+ Cæsarem +
| adesse |
| cern- |
-o

I
| perceive + that + Caesar |
| is-at-hand | +

Vir (qui
| + pauca + loquitur |)
| sapit |

He (who
| speaks [little] |)
| is a (wise) man |

[| [Quum] pervenisset |] profectus est
Caesar
| exercitus |

[| [When] had arrived |] set forth
Caesar
| the army |

[| [Si] [ita] dici- |] erra-
-s
-s

[| [If] say [so] |]
you
| you are wrong |

		Sequitur			
(tertia) vituperatio (senectutis)					
<i>quod</i>		+ eam +			
		dicu- carere +			
		-nt [voluptatibus] +			
There ¹		follows			
the third charge against old age,					
<i>namely the fact that</i>		they			
		say + it +			
		is barren of pleasures +			
[(Quo) pretio]					
credi-		+ veniturum esse +			
		-s- triticum? +			
[At (what?) price]					
do		think + wheat +			
		you will be sold +			
Sci-		+ [(quo?) pretio] veniturum sit +			
-ne		triticum +			
-s-					
Dost		know + [at (what?) price] +			
		wheat will be sold +			
thou					

N.B.—(a) Connective adverbs are analysed as simple adverbs.

(b) “*That*,” in English, preceding a noun clause (which may always be omitted), is taken as a demonstrative, with which the clause is in apposition.

(c) *Quod* (=the fact that) introducing a noun clause is to be treated as a conjunction, and not separately marked.

(d) Conjunctions and other words not considered in the Analysis are underlined (or printed *in italics*).

(e) Words understood must be supplied.

¹ See 78.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

8. Conjunctions do not enter into analysis.

When complete clauses are joined by conjunctions, they are analysed precisely as simple sentences.

Cæsar		Pompeius		Cæsar		Pompey
vivit	at	mortuus est		is alive,	but	is dead

Should the same subject be expressed with one predicate and understood with others, it may be indicated thus:—

Cicero	et	Cæsar		Cicero	and	Cæsar
eunt	et	colloquuntur		walk	and	talk

SPECIMEN OF ANALYSIS.

Hæc in Hispania secunda æstate belli Punici gesta; cum in Italia paulum intervalli cladibus Romanis sollers cunctatio Fabii fecisset; quæ ut Hannibalem non mediocri cura sollicitum habebat, tandem eum militiæ magistrum delegisse Romanos cernentem, qui bellum ratione non fortuna gereret, ita contempta erat inter cives armatos pariter togatosque.—LIVY, xxii. 23.

These events took place in Spain in the second summer of the Punic war, at the time when the Roman disasters in Italy had for a while been stayed by the masterly inactivity of Fabius, which, as on the one hand it disturbed Hannibal not a little, perceiving as he did that the Romans had at length chosen for their commander one whose strategy was based on calculation, not on chance, so on the other hand it was held in derision by his own countrymen, soldiers and civilians alike.

[See SCHEME OF ANALYSIS—next page.]

Hæc

[in Hispania]

[secunda æstate belli Punici]

gesta *sunt*

[cum]

[in Italia]

+ paulum intervalli +

* cladibus (Romanis) *

(sollers) cunctatio (Fabii)

fecisset

quæ

[ut]

+ Hannibalem +

[(non mediocri) cura]

(sollicitum)

habeba

+

delegisse

+ (militiæ) magistrum +

[tandem]

+ eum +

+

Romanos

cimentem

qui

+ bellum +

[ratione non fortuna]

gereret

.t

[ita]

erat (contempta)

[inter cive

(armatos [pariter] togatosque)]

302.

THE ALPHABET.

(1) Letters are divided into **vowels** and **consonants**.

(2) (a) **Vowels** (or *voice letters*) represent the sounds produced when the *voice* is emitted without interruption—viz., **a, e, i, o, u**.

(b) Each vowel may be sounded **long** (or *heavy*) or **short** (*light*).

In most cases there are several sounds intermediate between the longest and shortest, thus—

	Long sound.	Short sound.
a	ah!	cab
e	eh!	pen
i	he	him
o	oh!	hot
u	who?	full

(c) Of the vowels, **a** is the fullest or *heaviest*, the air-passage being more widely opened for it than for the others.

For **e** and **i**, the passage is contracted at the *back*,

For **o** and **u**, at the *front*, of the mouth.

The order of vowels from heavy to light is **a, o, u, e, i**.

(d) A **diphthong** is the combination of two vowel-sounds in one syllable—

eu (*few*); **ou** (*now*); **ai** (*fly*); **oi** (*boy*); and in Latin **au** (*fraus*).

N.B.—(1) Two vowels combined, but pronounced as one simple sound, do not form a diphthong—*e.g.*, the Latin *musæ* or the English *fraud*. They are equal to a single long vowel.

The sounds of **i** and **y** (*e.g.*, **I**, *why*) in English are generally diphthongs, not true vowel-sounds.

N.B.—(2) Vowels and diphthongs can be pronounced alone without the aid of other sounds—

ah, eh, o, i.

(3) **Consonants** are letters which must be joined to vowels in order to be fully sounded. Hence their name (*consonare*=to sound together with).

Consonants represent the sounds produced when the voice is wholly or partially *interrupted*.

(4) (1) When the voice is completely checked, the consonant is a **mute**—

p, b, t, d, k, g.

(2) When the voice is partially but not wholly checked, the consonant falls under one of the following clauses—

- | | | |
|--|-------------------|--|
| (a) Liquids (<i>flowing letters</i>) | l, m, n, r, | } Semi-vowels, or
continuous
consonants. |
| (b) Sibilants (<i>hissing letters</i>)
or Spirants (<i>breathing letters</i>) | s, z, f, v, h, j, | |

N.B.—**h** is neither a vowel nor a true consonant, being a mere breathing—

c, *hard* (*card*) is a mute = **k** ; *soft* (*city*) a sibilant = **s** ;
q is a mute = **k** (**q** is always followed by **u**).

(5) Consonants are likewise classified according to the organ used in pronouncing them—

- (a) Labials (*lip letters*), **p, b, f, v, m**.
 (b) { Linguals (*tongue letters*) } **t, d (th), s, z, l, r, n**.
 { Dentals (*teeth letters*) }
 (c) Gutturals (*throat letters*), **k, g (ng), h**.
 (d) Nasals (*nose letters*), **m, n (ng)**.

m being nasal and labial ; **n** nasal and lingual ; **ng** nasal and guttural.

N.B.—**th** and **ng**, though they have no separate sign in the Latin and English alphabet, represent simple sounds.
(Cf. Greek *θ*.)

(6) Hard and Soft Consonants.

(1) A consonant is **hard** when no voice, but only breath, is used in forming it—

p, t, k, s (sun), f, th (thick), h.

(2) A consonant is **soft** when some *voice* is used—

b, d, g, z (s in busy), v, th (=dh, as in the), j.

(7) When the check of breath by which a **mute** is formed is partially relaxed, an **aspirate** (or **spirant**) is formed, thus—

p becomes f	b becomes v	(labial aspirates).
t „ { th (thick)	d „ { th (=dh, as in the)	(lingual aspirates).
{ s	{ z	

The Latin and English *gutturals* **k** and **g** are not aspirated, as in German and in Greek, where *κ* becomes *χ*. **h** therefore by itself represents the **guttural aspirate**.

N.B.—Observe the change in Greek of *π* to *φ*, *τ* to *θ*, and *κ* to *χ*, when an aspirated vowel follows—

ἀφ' ὑμῶν = *ἀπὸ ὑμῶν*.

νύκθ' ὅλην = *νύκτα ὅλην*.

οὐχ ὁρᾷς = *οὐκ ὁρᾷς*.

(8) **Grimm's Law**—

The Classical languages and the Teutonic languages (including modern English and German) belong to the same family (the **Aryan**), and many words of common origin (**cognate** words) occur in all three.

The following law is observed, as to **mutes** and their corresponding **aspirates**, in the various languages respectively—

(1) **Labials** remain *labials* in all; **linguals**, *linguals*; and **gutturals**, *gutturals*.

(2)	Classical.	English.	German.
	<i>aspirate</i>	= <i>soft</i>	= <i>hard</i> .
	<i>soft</i>	= <i>hard</i>	= <i>aspirate</i> .
	<i>hard</i>	= <i>aspirate</i>	= <i>soft</i> .

The change occurring in the order **A S H**—

Classical.	English.	German.
θήρ	deer	thier (t hard)
duo	two	zwei
tres	three	drei
pater	father	vater
ποδ(ός)	foot	fusz
hospes	guest	

N.B.—All the changes as between Latin and English are illustrated in—

Duo fratres = *two brothers*.

(9) **Other letter-changes**—

The position of the tongue being much the same in the pronunciation of **l**, **r**, and **d**, these letters are easily interchanged—

Ὀδυσσεύς = Ulysses. δάκρυ = lacryma.

medidies = meridies. cæluleus = cæruleus (303, 4 (ii), (c).

303.

ROOTS AND STEMS.

(1) A **root** is the simplest and most general expression of an idea, and was originally always a monosyllable—

duc (root of *dux* = *ducs* and *dūco*).

reg (root of *rēx* = *regs* and *rēgo*).

dom (root of *domo* and *dominus*).

(2) Roots are of two kinds—

(i) **Verbal roots** (*predicative*). These indicate a class of

objects, actions, or qualities. From them are formed all parts of speech except pronouns and pronominal adjectives—

duc in *dux*, leader.

as in *es-t*, he is.

i in *i-re*, to go.

fac in *fac-ilis*, do able.

- (ii) **Pronominal roots** (*demonstrative*). These do not indicate any class of objects or actions, but merely point out the thing spoken of. From them are formed pronouns and pronominal adjectives—

ma in *me-i*, of me.

ta in *tu-i*, of thee.

i in *is*, that one, he.

- (3) A **stem** is a root adapted to be the foundation of a **word**.

A word applies the general idea which the root expresses to some particular sense: as a noun (*rex*), as a verb (*rego*), as an adjective (*rectus*), as an adverb (*recte*), &c. The words conveying these differences of sense are distinguished by *inflectional suffixes*. A stem is a root fitted to receive inflectional suffixes.

- (i) A **root stem** is a root used as a stem—

(a) *Without change*—

dūc, *dūc-s* (*dux*), *dūc-is*, &c.

(b) *With merely internal change* (strengthening of its vowel)—

dūc, *dūc-o*.

rēg, *rēg-s* (*rex*), *rēg-is*.

- (ii) A **primary stem** is a stem formed from a root by *external change*—

Root.	Suffix.	Stem.	Word.	
ar (<i>aro</i>)	vo	ar-vo	ar-vu-m	<i>field.</i>
fac (<i>facio</i>)	to	fac-to	fac-tu-s	<i>made.</i>
sta (<i>sto</i>)	tu	sta-tu	sta-tu-s	<i>position.</i>

- (iii) A **secondary stem** is a stem formed from a stem—

Root.	1st Stem.	Suffix.	2d Stem.	Word.	
vic (<i>vici</i>)	vic-tor	ia	victor-ia	victoria	<i>victory.</i>
		ic	victor-ic	victrix	<i>victress.</i>

- (iv) A **compound stem** contains two or more roots, and one or more stems—

	Comp. stem.	Word.	
Root + stem)	fu-era	fu-era-m	<i>I had been.</i>
(Prim. stem + root stem)	luci-fer	lucifer	<i>light-bearing.</i>

* * **Theme** and **base** are other names for **stem**.

- (4) In development of stems from roots, and of words from stems, various changes of letters occur—

(i) **Vowels**—

- (a) A **thematic** (or link) **vowel** not belonging to the stem is introduced to connect consonants—

leg-i-mus

homin-i-bus

- (b) Light vowels are frequently changed to heavy ones in *derivation*—

ācuo, *I sharpen.*

ācer, *sharp.*

sēdeo, *I sit.*

sēdes, *seat.*

fīdes, *faith.*

fīdus, *faithful.*

nēco, *I kill.*

nōceo, *I do hurt.*

mīser, *wretched.*

mæstus, *mournful.*

ūro, *I burn.*

aurora, *dawn.*

- (c) Heavy vowels are frequently changed to light in *composition*—

fācio, *I make.*

conficio, *I thoroughly make.*

cāpio, *I take.*

occūpo, *I seize.*

And also in *derivation*—

Sanskrit **ganas**; Greek γένος; Latin **genus**,
generis, **genitus**; **dominos**, **dominus**.

N.B.—For the natural order of vowels from heavy to light, see 302 (2), (c).

(ii) **Consonants**.

- (a) A consonant is partially or wholly assimilated to a letter preceding or following it—

vellem for vel-sem.

terra for tersa.

actus for agtus.

scriptus for scribtus.

impono for inpono.

concreresco for comcreresco.

- (b) **s** often passes into **r**, especially between two vowels—

eram for esam.

generis for genesis.

arbor for arbos.

- (c) **d** often becomes **l** or **r** (302 (9)), **l** sometimes becomes **r**—

meridies, medidies.

cæruleus, cæluleus.

(d) **m**, **n**, and **s** final being lightly sounded, were frequently dropped, *e.g.*—

Elision of **m** in verse. (Comp. *yes 'm*, for *yes, madam*).

sermo for **sermon**.

domini (gen. sing. and nom. plur.) for **dominis** (originally **dominois**).

(iii) **Interchange of vowels and consonants**—

(a) The vowel **i** is sometimes interchanged with the consonant **j**, and the vowel **u** with the consonant **v**. Vowel and consonant in these cases are akin—

ejus for **eius** (cf. *ipsius*).

amavi for **amaui** (cf. *docui*).

volutus for **volvtus**.

(Cf. **volvi** and **volui**, both in use as perfects of *volvo*.)

(iv) **Diphthongs**—

Excepting **au**, and rarely **eu** and **ei**, diphthongs in Latin are changed to single long vowels—

ai generally to **æ** (as in *pilæ*), sometimes into **ē** or **i**.

N.B.—**æ** being pronounced as one vowel, though written as a diphthong.

ou regularly to **u**.

(5) **Noun and Adjective Stems.**

(a) Stems of the 1st Declension end in **ā**.

„	2d	„	o .
„	3d	„	i (gen. plur. in ium).
			(consonants („ um).
„	4th	„	u .
„	5th	„	e .

1st Declension, **pilā**.

2d „ **domino, domino-s, dominus.**

3d „ { **civi, civis.**
duc, ducs = dux.

4th „ **fructu, fructu-s.**

5th „ **re, re-s.**

(b) The suffixes of all declensions were at first much the same,

if not absolutely so, changes being introduced by vowel decay. The following were probably the signs of the various cases :---

Singular.

- Nominative, s—** Dominu-s, dux (= cs), fructus, res.
Pila was probably originally pilas (cf. *ταμίᾱς*).
Sermo, originally sermons (stem **sermon**).
- Genitive, is, i—** The old genitive of the 1st Declension was in **ai** (cf. **aulai**, 104a (5)).
An older form was probably in **s** (cf. **familias**, 104a (2), also *μούσης*).
In the 2d Declension traces of the same are to be seen in **unius**, &c.
- Dative, i—** Compare domino with *λόγῳ*.
Also O. Eng. *the birdis song* = the bird's song.
- Accusative, em or m—** Neuter nominatives are accusatives used as such.
Things without life were considered first as objects, afterwards as subjects.
- Ablative, ād or ēd—** Pilā = pila-ed, domino = domino-ed, &c.

N.B.—**Vocative** of 2d Declension in **ě** is a decayed form of the stem without inflexion—
Domin**ě** = domin**ŏ**.

Plural.

- Nominative, es or i—** Pil**æ** for pil**ai**.
domin**i** for domino-**e** (cf. *λόγοι*),
probably for domino-**es** (cf. O. Eng. *the smallē birdis* = the small birds).
- Genitive, rum or um—**Cf. *cælicolum* = *cælicolarum*, &c.
- Dative, } bus, bis, }**
Ablative, } or is } Cf. *duobus*, *duabus*, *filiabus*, *nobis*.
- Accusative, s** preceded by a long vowel (originally **ms**—cf. *amant*). Thus pil**as** = pila-**mŕs**; domin**os** = domino-**ms**, &c.

(6) Stems of Verbs.

- (i) 1st Conjugation stems in **a**—amo = ama-o, ama-s, &c.
 2d „ „ **e**—mone-o, dele-o.
 3d „ „ { **u**—flu-o
 or **consonants**—reg-o.
 4th „ „ **i**—audi-o.

- (ii) In the 1st, 2d, and 4th Conjugations the tense and mood suffixes are generally joined directly to the stem—
 ama-bam, mone-rem, audi-re.

In the 3d Conjugation a *thematic vowel* is used to join them—

flu-i-s, reg-e-re.

* * But *fer-re* is an instance of a consonant stem joined directly to infinitive suffix.

- (iii) The stem is farther modified in various ways in the perfect and supine, and the parts formed from them.

304. LATIN NUMERATION.

- (1) The symbols for numbers in Latin are—

I	V	X	L	C	IƆ or D	CIƆ or M .
1	5	10	50	100	500	1000.

- (2) In the combination of these symbols *except* **IƆ** observe—

- (i) The same symbol repeated is added to its first value—

III = 3 **XXX** = 30 **CC** = 200.

- (ii) A smaller number written *after* a larger one is *added* to it—

XI = 11 **XIII** = 13 **XVIII** = 18 **LXXX** = 80
CCLX = 260 **MDCCCLXXXVI** = 1886

- (iii) A smaller number written *before* a larger one is *subtracted* from it—

IX = 9 **XL** = 40 **XC** = 90

- (3) In the combination of **IƆ** observe—

- (i) That each **Ɔ** added to the *right* (after the first) multiplies the value by 10. Thus—

IƆ = 500 **IƆƆ** = 5000 **IƆƆƆ** = 50,000.

- (ii) That these numbers are doubled by placing **C** *the same number of times* to the left. Thus—

$$\text{CI}\text{D} = 1000 \quad \text{CCI}\text{D}\text{D} = 10,000 \quad \text{CCCI}\text{D}\text{D}\text{D} = 100,000.$$

305. ROMAN MEASURES OF TIME.

I. Dates of Years.

- (1) Years were dated from the foundation of the city (B.C. 753). More commonly a year was indicated by the names of the Consuls who held office during it.

N.B.—**A.U.C.** = *anno urbis conditæ*. *In the year from the founding of the city.*

II. Divisions of the Year.

- (2) Originally the year contained but ten months, beginning with March. This accounts for the names *September*, *October*, *November*, *December*, these being the 7th, 8th, 9th, and 10th months respectively. The 5th and 6th months were called *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* (July and August).

Afterwards the months *January* and *February* were added, but the names of the others were retained.

Later *Quintilis* was named *Julius*, and *Sextilis*, *Augustus*, in honour of Julius and Augustus Cæsar.

Originally March, May, July, and October had 31 days; all other months 29.

- (3) Julius Cæsar (B.C. 45) reformed this calendar, which was very imperfect, and had produced much confusion.

He instituted *leap-years* every 4th year, and also fixed the number of days for each month at the figure we now use. His arrangement is known as the *Julian Calendar*. The Julian Calendar, being found still somewhat incorrect, was in A.D. 1582 further reformed by Pope Gregory XIII., who arranged for the omission of one leap-year in each century. This method of division, which is now in use throughout Europe (except in Russia), is called the *Gregorian Calendar*.

III. Divisions of the Month.

- (4) In the Latin month there are three principal days, from which the position of other days is reckoned.

- (i) *The Calends* (**Calendæ**, f.), the 1st of the month.

(ii) *The Nones* (**Nonæ**, f.) In *March, May, July*, and *October*, the **7th**; in *all other months*, the **5th**.

(iii) *The Ides* (**Idus**, f.) In *March, May, July*, and *October*, the **15th**; in *all other months*, the **13th**.

N.B.—This difference is a relic of the time when *March, &c.*, had more days than the other months.

(5) Other days are described by their position with regard to these. In so describing them, two points must be observed:—

(i) Always count from the point (*Calends, Nones, or Ides*) next **coming**, never to what is past.

(ii) Always count in *both* days—that reckoned *from*, and that reckoned *to*.

N.B.—On this system the number from one point to another is one more than we make it. Thus Sunday by the Roman computation is *seven* days before Saturday. Thus also the *Nones* were so named as being *nine* days before the *Ides*.

(6) (i) The date of the days on which the *Calends, Nones, or Ides* fall, is expressed by the ablatives **Calendis, Nonis, Idibus**, with the name of the month (which is an adjective) in agreement.

Thus **Calendis Martiis**, *the 1st of March*. **Nonis Maiis**, *the 7th of May*. **Idibus Septembribus**, *the 13th of September*.

(ii) The day before the *Calends, Nones, or Ides*, is expressed as **pridie Calendas, pridie Nonas, or pridie Idus**.

Thus, **pridie Calendas Januarias**, *the 31st of December*. **Pridie Idus Apriles**, *the 12th of April*.

(iii) The day previous to this is, by Latin reckoning, the **3d** day before the *Calends, Nones, or Ides*; the next is the **4th**, and so on.

The date is best expressed as **ante diem tertium** (*quartum, quintum, &c.*) **Calendas** (or **Nonas** or **Idus**), with the name of the month in agreement.

Thus, *April 3d*=**ante diem tertium Nonas Apriles**.

May 3d=**ante diem quintum Nonas Maias**.

June 8th = ante diem sextum Idus Junias.

June 21st = ante diem undecimum Calendas
Julias.

N.B.—(1) When counting from the *Nones* or *Ides*, add **one** to the English day of the month on which they occur, and subtract the date of the day in question.

When counting from the *Calends*, add **two** to the number of days in the month before these *Calends*, and subtract the date of the day in question.

N.B.—(2) The date may be briefly expressed, as
a. d. III (for *ante diem tertium*) **Non. Apr.**,
&c., or **III. Non. Apr.**

- (7) In leap-year the Latins add, like us, a day to *February*, but number its days, up to the 24th inclusive, as though there were to be but 28 days. The 24th is therefore *a. d. VI. Calendas Martias*. On the 25th they begin to allow for the 29th day, therefore the 25th is likewise *a. d. VI*.

The day thus twice reckoned was called *dies bissextus*, and from its occurrence a leap-year was named **annus bissextilis**.

N.B.—(3) The phrases **ante diem**, &c., are sometimes treated as indeclinable nouns—

Ex ante diem III. Nonas Junias usque ad pridie
Calendas Septembres. *From June 3d to*
August 31st.

- (8) *The Roman day* was from sunrise to sunset, and its length consequently varied with the seasons. At its longest it was about 15 hours, and at its shortest about 9.

It was divided into 12 *hours* (**horæ**), the length of which varied with the day. At midsummer their length was about 75 minutes, and in midwinter about 45.

- (9) *The Roman night* was from sunset to sunrise, and varied inversely as the day.

It was divided into four *watches* (**vigiliæ**) of equal length, the 1st beginning at sunset and the 3d always at midnight.

306. ROMAN MONEY AND WEIGHTS.

- (1) The **as** (m.) was originally a Roman pound of copper (= about $11\frac{1}{2}$ oz. avoirdupois), worth in our money about eightpence. Its weight, and consequently its value, were gradually reduced, till finally it contained only $\frac{1}{24}$ of a pound.

In the Classical period it was worth nearly a penny.

The **as** was the basis of the Roman system both of money and weights.

As a weight it was also called **libra** (*pound*): hence the English symbol *lb*. From the **uncia**, or $\frac{1}{12}$ of the pound, we have the English *ounce*.

Money.

- (2) The **unit of computation** was not the **as** but the **sestertius** (*sesterce*) = $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses; its value being, in the Classical period, rather more than twopence under the Republic, and rather less than twopence under the Empire.

The name **sestertius** = *semis tertius* = two and a half ("the third a half").

The symbol for the **sestertius** was **HS** (= *libra, libra, semis, or I.I.S.*)

The **sestertius** was also called **nummus sestertius**, or simply **nummus** (*coin*).

- (3) In the computation of sums of money, four uses of the word are to be distinguished.

- (a) **Sestertius, -i** (= *one sesterce*), regularly declined in singular and plural (genitive plural usually **sestertium**).

Used with **cardinal numeral adjectives** (*unus* to *mille* inclusively), or the genitive plural with **the noun millia**—

mille sestertii = 1000 sesterces.

duo millia sestertium = 2000 sesterces.

- (b) The genitive plural, **sestertium**, came to be taken as a neuter noun, from which a plural, **sestertia**, was formed. But singular and plural were quite differently used.

- (i) The plural, **sestertia**, was used most commonly with **distributive** numerals to denote sums of 1000 *sestertii* each (about £8, 17s. under the Republic, and £7, 16s. under the Empire)—

trina sestertia = 3000 sesterces.

To distinguish **sestertia** from **sestertii**, a line is drawn over the HS—

HS III = 3 sesterces. $\overline{\text{HS}}$ III = 3000 sesterces.

- (ii) The singular, **sestertium** (declined regularly, but used only in nom., gen., acc., and abl.), was used with a **numeral adverb alone** to denote **100,000 sesterces**—

duodecies sestertium (*twelve times a sestertium*) = 1,200,000 sesterces.

Ad summam sestertii decies. To the amount of 1,000,000 sesterces.

quadrages sestertio emit. He bought it for 4,000,000 sesterces.

To distinguish **sestertium** thus used from **sestertii** and **sestertia**, a line is drawn over both the HS and the numeral attached—

$\overline{\text{HS XXX}}$ = *trices sestertium* = 3,000,000 sesterces.

N.B.—(1) **Sestertium, -i**, is not used for sums of less than a million sesterces, therefore not with numeral adverbs less than decies, *ten times*.

N.B.—(2) **Sestertium** is sometimes omitted, and the adverb used alone—

decies accepi, I received 1,000,000 sesterces.

N.B.—(3) **Sestertium** (nom. or acc. sing), meaning 100,000 sesterces, must be carefully distinguished from **sestertium** (gen. plur.), meaning simply sesterces. The former is joined immediately to a numeral adverb; the other immediately to *millia*—

decies centena millia sestertium = a million sesterces.

decies sestertium = a million sesterces.

N.B.—(4) The **sestertius** was a *coin* (of brass or silver).

sestertium and **sestertia** were not coins, but represented *amounts of money*.

(4) Other Coins.

(a) The **denarius** the principal silver coin in use, originally con-

tained **10 asses**. When the *as* fell in value, the *denarius* was made = **16 asses**, but in military pay it still counted as 10 only.

Under the Republic its value was about $8\frac{1}{2}d.$; under the Empire, about $7\frac{1}{2}d.$

(b) The **aureus**, or gold coin, contained **25 denarii**.

Its money value at Rome was therefore under £1; but the gold it contained was equal to a guinea of our money.

(5) **Interest**, in Classical times, was reckoned by the month. The legal rate was 1 per cent per month = 12 per cent per annum. This was known as **centesimæ usuræ**. To express lower rates, like other fractions, the divisions of the **as** were used thus—

usuræ uncia = 1 per cent per annum ($\frac{1}{12}$ per cent per month).

usuræ besses = 8 per cent per annum ($\frac{2}{3}$ per cent per month), &c.

307. ROMAN MEASURES OF LENGTH.

(1) **Pes**, *the foot* = $11\frac{2}{5}$ English inches (divided into 12 **uncia**, whence English *inch*).

(2) **Passus**, *the pace* = *two steps* (**gradus**) = $4\frac{5}{8}$ English feet, nearly.

N.B.—A *pace* was measured from the spot where the foot was taken up to that where *the same foot* was put down again.

(3) **Mille passus**, *the mile* = 4854 English feet.

The Roman mile was thus shorter than ours by 426 feet.

308. MEASURES OF CAPACITY.

Dry Measure.

(1) **Modius** = about 2 gallons (1 peck).

Liquid Measure.

(2) **Amphora** = 3 modii = 1 Roman cubic foot = about $5\frac{3}{4}$ gallons English.

The **amphora** contained 2 **urnæ**; the **urna**, 4 **congi**; the **congius**, 6 **sextarii**; $\frac{1}{12}$ (*uncia*) of a **sextarius** = 1 **cyathus**.

309.

ROMAN NAMES.

- (1) A Roman citizen had usually three names—

The *first*, or **prænomen**, designated the *individual*.

The *second*, or **nomen**, „ the *gens* or *tribe*.

The *third*, or **cognomen**, „ the *family*.

Marcus Tullius Cicero = *Marcus* of the *Cicero* family of the *Tullian* gens.

Publius Cornelius Scipio = *Publius* of the *Scipio* family of the *Cornelian* gens.

- (2) An **agnomen** (or *surname*) was added for distinguished exploits, or on account of some other characteristic.

Thus Scipio, for his victories in Africa, was surnamed *Africanus*; and afterwards, when the same title was given to another Scipio, *Major* was added in the case of the first and *Minor* in that of the second. The name of the elder Scipio was thus in full—**Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus Major**.

Another Scipio, on account of his pointed nose, was named *Pub. Corn. Scipio Nasica*.

N.B.—**Cognomen** is sometimes used of any name following the *nomen*, therefore including the *agnomen*.

- (3) An adopted son took his adoptive father's name in full, to which he added as an *agnomen* an adjectival form of the name of his own *gens*.

Thus the younger Scipio, who was of the *Æmilian* gens, and adopted by Publius Scipio (son of *Africanus Major*), was named in full *Publius Cornelius Scipio Æmilianus Africanus Minor*.

The Emperor Augustus, who was of the *Octavian* gens, and adopted by Caius Julius Cæsar, was *Caius Julius Cæsar Octavianus* (*Augustus* being added as another *agnomen* afterwards).

- (4) The **prænomen** is often abbreviated—

A. = Aulus.

M. = Marcus.

S. (Sex.) = Sextus.

Ap. = Appius.

M'. = Manius.

Ser. = Servius.

C. = Caius.

Mam. = Mamercus.

Sp. = Spurius.

Cn. = Cnæus.

N. = Numercus.

T. = Titus.

D. = Decimus.

P. = Publius.

Ti. (Tib.) = Tiberius.

L. = Lucius.

Q. = Quintus.

- (5) Women were generally known by the name of their gens. Thus the daughter of Julius Cæsar was simply **Julia**; of Tullius Cicero, **Tullia**; of Cornelius Scipio, **Cornelia**. Three sisters were distinguished, *e.g.*, as *Cornelia*, *Cornelia Secunda* or *Minor*, *Cornelia Tertia*.

310.

PROSODY.

I. General Rules.

- (1) A vowel before two consonants (or a double consonant) in the same word is long: as *pōssūnt*, *āxis*.
 (2) This is true also when one of the two consonants is at the end of one word, and the other at the beginning of the next, as *jussit pueros*.
 (3) A short vowel before a mute and a liquid is made common—*i.e.*, may be used either long or short, as *pāter*, *pātris*, or *pātris*.

N.B.—The mute and the liquid must both belong to the same syllable for the vowel to be used short.

- (4) A vowel before another vowel in the same word is short, as *omnia*. The exceptions are—
 (i) Genitives in *-ius*, as *unius*, where the *i* is common: in *alterius*, however, it is always short, and in *alius* (gen.) always long.
 (ii) Genitives and datives of the 5th Declension, like *faciēi*, where the *e* is long when it comes between two *i*'s.
 (iii) The first syllable of the verb *fīo*, which is long in all its moods and tenses except the infin. and imperf. subj.
 (iv) Some words derived from the Greek, as *āēr*; and some Greek proper names, as *Lāērtes*, *Ænēas*.

- (5) Diphthongs and contracted syllables are long, as *Cæsar*, *cōgo* for *coago*, *nīl* for *nihil*.

Except the preposition *præ*, which is short when it comes before a vowel in composition, as *præustus*.

II. Some Rules for Non-Final Syllables.

- (6) In substantives and adjectives the vowel preceding *-rum* of the gen. plur. is long, as *pennārum*, *dominōrum*, *faciērum*.

- (7) When the dative plural ends in *-bus*, or *-bis*, if the preceding vowel is *a*, *e*, or *o*, it is long, as *filiābus*, *faciēbus nobis*: if it is *i* or *u*, it is short, as *montibus*, *quercibus*.
- (8) The quantities of the vowels which mark the four conjugations of verbs have been already learnt.
The verb *do dare* (to give) is an exception, for though of the first conjugation, it has *ā* short throughout.
- (9) The increments of all verbs in the imperf. indicative are long, as *legēbam*, *legēbātis*: except, of course, the penult of the second pers. plur. of the passive, as *docebamini*.
- (10) The penult of the third plur. of the perf. ind. act. is long in all verbs, as *fuērunt*, or *fuēre*.
Poets sometimes shorten this syllable: thus Ovid shortens it in *vagiērunt*, *compulērunt*, *audiērunt*.
- (11) Dissyllable perfects have the first long, as *vēni*, *vīdi*, *vīci*.
Except *bībi*, *dēdi*, *scīdi*, *stēti*, *tūli*, and *fīdi* from *findo*.
- (12) Reduplicated perfects have the first short, as *fēfelli*; and the second also short, if not before two consonants, as *dīdīci*, *cēcīni*, *pēpūli*, *tētīgi*.
Except *cecīdi* from *cado* (to cut).
- (13) Dissyllable supines have the first long, as *mōtum*, *vīsum*: so also have the participles that are formed from them, as *vīsus*, *vīsurus*.
The exceptions are *itum*, *dātum*, *lītum*, *rātum*, *rūtum*, *sātum*, *sītum*, *stātum*.

III. Rules for Final Syllables.

- (14) The general rule for vowel-endings is—
a and *e* final are short; *i*, *o*, and *u* final are long.
There are numerous exceptions—
- (i) *a* final is long in the abl. sing. of the 1st Declension, in the imperative of the 1st Conjugation, and in all indeclinable words except *itā* and *quā*.
 - (ii) *e* final is long in the abl. sing. of the 5th Declension, and in *famē*, abl. of *fames -is*; in the imperative of the 2d Conjugation; in adverbs derived from adjectives in *-us*, as *doctē* (except *benē* and *malē*), and in monosyllables that are not enclitics, as *mē*, *tē*, *sē*, *nē*.

- (iii) *i* final is short in *nīs*, *quās*, and common in *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ubi*, *ibi*.
- (iv) *o* final is short in the adverbs *modō* and *citō*; in the pronoun *egō*; in the numerals *duō*, *octō*; and in the verbs *sciō*, *nesciō*.
- (15) Words ending in *b*, *d*, *t*, *l*, *n*, *r*, have their finals short, as *sūb*, *apūd*, *vincīt*, *semēl*, *carmēn*, *amōr*.
- (i) Some monosyllables are excepted, as the adverbs *nōn*, *quān*, *cūr*, and the nouns *sōl*, *vēr*, *fūr*, *pār*.
- (ii) Also words from the Greek with long vowels, as *aēr*, *æthēr*, *cratēr*.
- (16) *c* endings are long, as *sīc*, *hōc*, *hūc*. But *nēc*, and *donēc* are short, and the pronoun *hic* is common.
- (17) *s* endings depend for quantity on the preceding vowel, thus—
-as, *-es*, and *-os* final are long, as *pennās*, *nubēs*, *dominōs*. The exceptions are these—
- (i) Some nouns from the Greek have *ās* short in the nom. sing. and acc. plur., as *lampās*, *lampadās*.
- (ii) *-es* final is short in the nom. sing. of nouns whose increment is short, as *milēs militis*, *segēs segētis*; but *Cerēs*, *ariēs*, *abiēs*, *pariēs*, and *pēs*, have *es* long, though their increment is short.
- es* from *sum* is short, with its compounds.
- (iii) *os* final is short in *ōs ossis*, and in *compōs*, *impōs*, which have a short increment.
- (18) *-is* and *-us* final are short, as *ignīs*, *templūs*. The exceptions are—
- (i) Datives and ablatives plural in *-s*, as *dominīs*, *nobīs*, and the second person sing. of all tenses where the second plur. has the penult long, as *audīs audītis*, *velīs velītis*, *sīs sītis*.
- (ii) Nouns ending in *-us* which have a long increment, as *virtūs virtūtis*, *tellūs tellūris*; and all cases in *-us* of the 4th Declension except the nom. and voc. sing.

311.

FIGURES OF SPEECH.

A figure is a deviation from the proper *form*, *pronunciation*, *construction*, or *signification* of words.

I. Figures of Etymology.

(Deviations from proper form.)

- (1) *Aphæresis*, the taking away of a letter or letters from the beginning of a word ($\acute{\alpha}\phi\alpha\lambda\epsilon\sigma\iota\varsigma$ = a taking away)—
'st for *est*.
- (2) *Apocope*, the taking away from the end ($\acute{\alpha}\pi\omicron\kappa\omicron\pi\acute{\eta}$ = a cutting off)—
tun' for *tune*?
- (3) *Syncope*, the taking away from the middle ($\sigma\upsilon\gamma\kappa\omicron\pi\acute{\eta}$ = a cutting together)—
sæclum for *sæculum*.
- (4) *Metathesis*, transposition of letters ($\mu\epsilon\tau\acute{\alpha}\theta\epsilon\sigma\iota\varsigma$ = transposition)—
cretus for *certus*.

II. Figures of Prosody.

(Deviations from proper pronunciation.)

- (5) *Elision*, the suppression of a final syllable ending in a vowel, a diphthong, or the letter **m**, before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* (*elisio* = a crushing out)—
Monstrum horrendum informe ingens.
N.B.—Elision is in different cases variously called *synalæpha*, *synapheia*, and *echthlipsis*.
- (6) *Hiatus*, the omission to elide a syllable in the same circumstances (*hiatus* = a gap)—
The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *pro* are never elided.
Long vowels and diphthongs are sometimes retained, especially in the *arsis* of a foot—
Stant et juniperi et castaneæ hirsutæ.
- (7) *Synæresis*, two syllables contracted into one ($\sigma\upsilon\nu\alpha\lambda\epsilon\sigma\iota\varsigma$ = a drawing together)—
Aurēā, dēinde, ēādem.
- (8) *Diæresis*, one syllable resolved into two ($\delta\iota\alpha\lambda\epsilon\sigma\iota\varsigma$ = a drawing asunder)—
Aurai for aurēā, **Orpheüs** for Orpheūs.
- (9) *Diastole*, a short syllable made long ($\delta\iota\alpha\sigma\tau\omicron\lambda\acute{\eta}$ = a prolongation)—
Qūe for *que*.
- (10) *Systole*, a long syllable made short ($\sigma\upsilon\sigma\tau\omicron\lambda\acute{\eta}$ = a contraction)—
Tulērunt for *tulērunt*.

III. Figures of Syntax.

(*Deviations from proper construction.*)

- (11) *Ellipsis*, omission of a word or words (ἔλλειψις = a leaving out)—
 Ad Jovis (**templum**). *To Jove's temple.*
 Hic illius arma (**fuerunt**). *Here were her arms.*
- (12) *Asyndeton* is an ellipsis of a conjunction (ἀσύνδετον = not bound together)—
 Veni, vidi, vici = *I came, I saw, I conquered.*
- (13) *Brachylogy* is a concise and abridged expression (βραχυλογία = a short way of speaking)—
 Natura hominis beluis antecedit. *The nature of man surpasses (that of) brutes.*
- (14) *Zeugma* employs a word in two or more connections, though strictly applicable only in one (ζευγμα = a yoking together)—
Pacem an bellum **gerens**. *Whether waging war or peace.*
- (15) *Pleonasm* is a full, redundant, or emphatic form of expression (πλεονασμός = superabundance)—
 Erant omnino itinera duo quibus **itineribus** exire possent.
There were two roads by which (roads) they could set forth.
- N.B.*—*Pleonasm* is altogether distinct from *tautology*, which is a useless repetition (ταυτολογία = a saying of the same)—
 Aristophanes makes Euripides charge Æschylus with tautology in such expressions as—
 ἦκω καὶ κατέρχομαι. *I arrive and come.*
 κηρύσσω κλύειν ἀκοῦσαι. *I bid him listen and hearken.*
- (16) *Hendiadys*, the use of two nouns instead of a noun with a qualifying word (ἐν διὰ δυοῖν = one through two)—
 Pateris et auro. *With golden bowls.*
- (17) *Enallage*, the substitution of one part of speech for another, or one form for another (ἐναλλαγή = an interchange)—
 Populus late **rex** = populus late regnans. *A people with extensive sway.*
 Cursus **justi** fluminis = cursus justus fluminis. *The right course of the river.*
- (18) *Synesis*, construction according to sense, without regard to grammatical forms (σύνεσις = understanding)—
 Pars capti sunt. *Some were taken.*

- (19) *Anacolouthon*, want of harmony in construction of different parts of a sentence (*ἀνακόλουθον*=wanting sequence)—

Ut dicunt omnes Graios esse (*for* Graii sunt). *As they say, all are Greeks.*

- (20) *Hyperbaton*, transposition of words or clauses (*ὑπερβατόν*=transposed)—

Nihil erat super=nihil supererat. *Nothing remained.*

Valet atque vivit. *He is alive and well.*

- * * The transposition of clauses (as in the second example) is sometimes called *hysteron proteron* (*ὑστερον πρότερον*=the cart before the horse).

IV. Figures of Rhetoric.

(*Deviations from proper signification of words.*)

- (21) *Metaphor*, transference of a term from its proper subject to another (*μεταφορά*=a transference)—

Sitiunt segetes. *The corn-fields are athirst.*

Reipublicæ vulnus (*for* **damnum**). *The wound of the state.*

N.B.—*Simile*, or comparison, is not a figure of speech, words being used in their proper sense—

Venti **velut** agmine facto. *The winds as if they had set themselves in array.*

- (22) *Allegory* is an extended metaphor (*ἀλληγορία*=implying one thing by another)—

Talking of the state as a ship, &c.

- (23) *Metonymy*, use of one name for another naturally suggested by it (*μετωνυμία*=transference of name)—

Æquo Marte, *for* *prælio*.

Neptunus, *for* *the sea*.

- (24) *Synecdoche*, naming the whole for a part, or *vice versa* (*συνεκδοχή*=understanding one thing with another)—

Carinæ (keels)=ships.

- (25) *Irony*, the use of a word for its contrary (*εἰρωνεία*=dissimulation)—

Bonus imperator vester! *That nice general of yours!*

The above figures of Rhetoric are sometimes called *Tropes* (*τρόποι*=turns of language).

- (26) *Climax*, a series of expressions, each stronger than the preceding ($\kappa\lambda\iota\mu\alpha\chi$ =a ladder)—

Nihil agis, nihil moliris, nihil cogitas. *You do nothing, try nothing, intend nothing.*

- (27) *Hyperbole*, an exaggeration ($\upsilon\pi\epsilon\rho\beta\omicron\lambda\acute{\eta}$ =an overshooting)—

Gemini minantur in cœlum scopuli. *Twin crags tower threatening to the skies.*

- (28) *Litôtes*, denial of something in place of assertion of its opposite ($\lambda\iota\tau\acute{o}\tau\eta\varsigma$ =plainness)—

Non nihil=*something*.

Non indoctus=*somewhat learned*.

- (29) *Prosopopœia*, personification of inanimate objects ($\pi\rho\omicron\sigma\omega\pi\omicron\pi\omicron\iota\acute{\alpha}$ =personification)—

Necessity is the mother of invention.

- (30) *Apostrophe*, an address to inanimate objects or absent persons ($\acute{\alpha}\pi\omicron\sigma\tau\rho\omicron\phi\acute{\eta}$ =a turning away)—

Tu Troja nunc stares. *Thou, Troy, wouldst still be standing.*

* * * The following artifices—though not strictly figures—are to be noticed.

- (31) *Alliteration*, repetition of the same letter at the beginning of successive words (*alliteratio*=putting of letter to letter)—

Vi victa vis est. *Force was foiled by force.*

- (32) *Apophrās̄is*, pretended omission ($\acute{\alpha}\pi\acute{o}\phi\alpha\varsigma\iota\varsigma$ =a denial)—

Non dico te pecunias accepisse; rapinas tuas omnes omitto. *I do not mention that you were bribed; I say nothing of all your acts of violence.*

- (33) *Aposiopē̄sis*, an ellipsis which, for rhetorical effect, leaves the sentence unfinished ($\acute{\alpha}\pi\omicron\sigma\iota\acute{\omega}\pi\eta\varsigma\iota\varsigma$ =a becoming silent)—

Quos ego—— Sed motos præstat componere fluctus.
Whom I will—— But first let me still the raging sea.

- (34) *Euphemism*, use of mild or agreeable language on unpleasant subjects ($\epsilon\upsilon\phi\eta\mu\iota\sigma\mu\acute{o}\varsigma$ =speaking well)—

Pontus Euxinus. *The hospitable sea (for the stormy sea = the Black Sea).*

- (35) *Antithesis*, contrast ($\acute{\alpha}\nu\tau\acute{\iota}\theta\epsilon\iota\varsigma$ =a setting against)—

Publice egestas, privatim opulentia. *Public want, private wealth.*

- (36) *Onomatopœia*, imitation of sound described (*ὀνοματοποιία* = word-making)—

Mugiunt boves. *The cattle low (moo).*

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum
(*of horses galloping*).

Quamvis sint sub aqua sub aqua maledicere tentant (*of frogs croaking*).

- (37) *Oxymōron*, an apparent contradiction (*ὀξύμωρον* = pointedly foolish)—

Quum tacent clamant. *When silent they cry out—i.e., their silence is eloquent.*

- (38) *Paronomasia*, punning (*παρονομασία* = play upon words)—

Jus verrinum. *Verres' law, or pig booth.*

312. ABBREVIATIONS USED IN LATIN.

(1) CLASSICAL.

A.D. (or **a.d.**), ante diem.

A.U.C., anno urbis conditæ.

Cos., consul, consule.

Coss., consules, consulibus.

D., Divus (applied to deceased emperors).

D.D., dono dedit.

D.M., dis manibus.

D.S., de suo.

F., filius.

F.C., faciendum curavit.

HS, sestertius.

Id., idem.

Kal., Kalendæ (Calendæ).

Non., Nonæ.

O.M., optimus maximus.

P.C., Patres conscripti.

P.R., Populus Romanus.

Q.B.F.F.Q.S., quod bonum felix
faustumque sit.

S.C., Senatus consultum.

S.P.D., Salutem plurimam dicit.

S.P.Q.R., Senatus populusque Romanus.

S.V.B.E.E.V., Si vales bene est,
ego valeo.

(2) MODERN.

A.C., anno Christi. }

A.D., anno Domini. }

A.M., anno mundi.

a.C.n., ante Christum natum.

p.C.n., post Christum natum.

c., caput (chapter).

cet., cetera.

cf., conferatur.

cp., comparetur.

del., deleatur.

D.O.M., Deo Optimo Maximo.

e.g., exempli gratia.

h.e., hoc est.

ibid., ibidem.

id. , idem.	P.S. , post scriptum.
i.e , id est.	q.v. , quod vide.
i.q. , id quod.	sc. , scilicet.
Lib. , Libb. , liber, libri.	sq. , sqq. , sequenti, sequentibus.
L.B. , lectori benevolo.	s.v. , sub voce.
l.c. , loco citato.	vid. , vide.
leg. , legatur.	viz. , videlicet.
L.S. , locus sigilli. scripta.	V. cel. , vir celeberrimus.
MS. , MSS. , manuscriptum, manu-	V. cl. , vir clarissimus.
N.B. , nota bene.	v.g. , verbi gratia.
N.T. , Novum Testamentum.	V.T. , Vetus Testamentum.

313. PERIODS OF LATIN LITERATURE.

I. The **Ante-Classical Period**, 250 to 81 B.C.—

Ennius.	Plautus.	Terence.	Lucretius.
---------	----------	----------	------------

II. The **Classical Period**—

(i) *Golden age*, 81 B.C. to 14 A.D.—

Cicero.	Nepos.	Horace.	Tibullus.
Cæsar.	Livy.	Ovid.	Propertius.
Sallust.	Virgil.	Catullus.	

N.B.—Prose was at its best before Augustus; verse in his reign.

(ii) *Silver age*, 14 to 180 A.D.—

Phædrus.	The Plinys.	Quintilian.	Persius.
Velleius.	Tacitus.	Suetonius.	Lucan.
The Senecas.	Curtius.	Juvenal.	Martial.

III. The **Post-Classical Period**—

(i) *Brazen age*, 180 to 476 A.D.—

Justin.	Eutropius.	Lactantius.	Claudian.
Victor.	Macrobius.	Ausonius.	Terentian.

(ii) *Iron age*, 476 to 550 A.D.—

Boethius.	Cassiodorus.	Justinian.	Priscian.
-----------	--------------	------------	-----------

I N D E X.

A! (Ah!), construction of, 142,
N.B. (1).

Abbreviations, Latin, 312.

ABLATIVE, inflexions of, see *Declensions*.

nature of, 101, 201*a*; enlarged by preposition, 201*a*; of cause, manner, and instrument, 210; living agent, 210 (2); with middle verb, 211, 211*a*; of source and separation, 212, 212*a*; (or genitive), with words signifying plenty or want, 213 (1), (2); (or nominative), with *opus est* and *usus est*, 213 (3); with *assuefio* and *assuetus*, 213*a* (3); of time when or within which, 216; of price and worth, 217; of charge, 218*a* (1).

Absolute, 219, 219*a*; of comparison, 236.

Abstract nouns, 109 (2), (iii).

Abutor, a middle verb, 211*a*.

Accipiter, 106*a* (3).

ACCUSATIVE inflexions, see *Declensions*.

nature of, 101, 201*a*; enlarged by preposition, 201*a*; with transitive verbs, 203; with *opus est* and *usus est*, 213*a* (2); of extent (space), 215; (time), 216; (closer definition), 223; predicative (with factitive verb), 220; double accusative, 221; cognate, 222; with impersonals of feeling, 225.

Achilles, 109 (1), (iii).

Acubus, 107*a* (3).

ADJECTIVES defined, 29, 34 (i); descriptive and determinative, 30, 31, 32; of quality and quantity, 31, 122-125; comparison, 59-61; inflexions, 77; adverbial use, 209*a* (3), * * III.; agreement, 76, 207; attributed and predicated, 34.

Possessive, 32, 116*a*; nature of, 44, *N.B.*, 116*a*, 117; used subjectively and objectively, 208*a*.

Demonstrative, 32; nature of, 44, 116*a*, 117; demonstratives of quality, 122 (2); correspond to relatives, 38, 40 (4); attraction, 209*a* (3).

Relative, 32, 118; relatives of quality, 122 (2); correlated to demonstrative, 38, 40, 122; construction of, 209, 209*a*; attraction, 209*a*. [See *Relative* and *Relative clause*.]

Correlative, 38, 122.

Indefinite, 32 (2), (c).

Interrogative, 32 (2), (d).

Comparison of adjectives, 59, 61.

ADJECTIVES, LATIN, position of, 110 (1), *N.B.*; inflexions of 1st and 2d Declensions, 111, 111*a*, 116; of 3d Declension, 112, 112*a*.

Possessive, 116, 116*a*; with *refert* and *interest*, 226.

Demonstrative, 117, 117*a*.

- Relative*, 118, 118*a*; various uses of, 263*a*; with subjunctive, 273, 275, 277, 279.
Interrogative, 119, 119*a*.
Indefinite, 120, 120*a*; distinctions of, 120*a* (4).
 Adjectives with gen. sing. in -*ius*, 121; comparison of, 113; irregular, 113*a*.
 ADVERBS, nature and use of, 35, 139.
Descriptive, 36 (1); numeral, 36 (2).
Demonstrative, 36 (3), 38, 122 (4).
Relative, 36 (4), 37, *N.B.*, 38, 40 (3), 122 (3).
Correlative, 38, 122 (3).
Indefinite, 36 (5).
Interrogative, 36 (6), 259, 260.
Connective, 37, 40, 139; distinguished from conjunctive, 46, 264; nature of, 264*a*.
 Comparison of, 59; in Latin, 114, 114*a*; irregular, 114*a*.
Age, *agite*, with special meaning, 135 (i).
 Agent, living, construction of, 210 (2), 230.
 AGREEMENT, 75, 76.
Aio, defective, 135*d*.
Aliqui(s), 120*a* (3).
 Allegory, 311 (22).
 Alliteration, 311 (31).
Ambo, declension, 104*a* (2), *N.B.*, 125 (1), *N.B.*.
Amphorum, 104*a* (4).
Amussim, 106*a* (6).
Anacolouthon, 311 (19).
 ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES, 49-51, 56, 57, 78; representation of, 301.
 ANTECEDENT (of *Relative*), 32 (2), 209, 209*a*; of relative adverb, 36 (4).
 Antithesis, 311 (35).
 Aorist (indefinite) tenses, 70, 74.
Apage, 135*h*.
Aphæresis, 311 (1).
Apis, 106*a* (3).
Apocope, 311 (2).
 APODOSIS, 280, 281, 282.
Apophasis, 311 (32).
Aposiopêsis, 311 (33).
 Apostrophe, 311 (30).
 APPPOSITION, 206.
Arcubus, 107*a* (3).
Argivûm, 104*a* (4), 105*a* (5).
 ARTICLE, wanting in Latin, 101, *N.B.* (a).
Artubus, 107*a* (3).
As, divisions of the, 126 (3).
Assuefio and *assuetus*, with ablative, 213*a* (3).
Asyndeton, 311 (12).
 ATTRACTION of relative and demonstrative, 209*a* (2), (3).
 ATTRIBUTE, distinguished from Predicate, 33, 34, 206.
Aulai, 104*a* (5).
Ausim, 133*a* (9), 134 (2).
Aut, distinguished from *vel*, 288*a* (3).
 AUXILIARY, see *Verb*.
Ave, 135 (h).
Axo, 133*a* (9).
Belli, locative, 105*a* (3), 214*a* (3).
Bini, distinguished from *duo*, 126 (1).
 Brachylogy, 311 (13).
Cælebs, gen. plur. of, 112*a* (3).
Canis, 106*a* (3).
 Capacity, Roman measures of, 308.
Capso, 133*a* (8).
 CASES, why so called, 103 (4).
 Case notions, 201*a*; synopsis of case construction, 238.
 Cause expressed by ablative, 210, 210*a*; by subjunctive, 274.
Cedo, *cedite* (*cette*), 135 (h).
Cenatus, 134 (9).
Cette, 135 (h).
Clam, 140 (2), *N.B.* (2).
 CLAUSE, defined, 53, *N.B.*; principal clause, 56, *N.B.*; subordinate clauses, 54-56, 58; noun, adjective, and adverb clauses, 56, 254 *seq.*, 261, 262, 263 *seq.*; co-ordinate clauses, clauses introduced by *ut* and *ne*, 253*a*.
Clavem (or -*im*), 106*a* (7).
 Climax, 311 (26).
Cælicolûm, 104*a* (4).
Cæpi, defective, 135*a*.
 Collective Nouns, 109 (11), (12); as subject, 201*a* (4).
 Commands in *oratio obliqua*, 254*a*, 271.

COMPARATIVE CLAUSES, 283.

COMPARATIVE DEGREE, 59, 113*a* (3); complement of, 60, 61; in *Latin adjectives*, 113 (1); irregular, 113*a*; abl. sing. and gen. plur. of, 113, *N.B.*; in *Latin adverbs*, 114, 114*a*; construction with comparative, 235.

Compes, 106*a* (4).

Complement of comparative and superlative, 60, 61; of verbs, 19-23, 201-205.

COMPLEX SENTENCE, see *Sentence*.

COMPOUND SENTENCE, see *Sentence*.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES, 286.

Conditional Sentences, 281, 282.

Conditions, disjunctive, 282*a*.

CONJUNCTIONS, 46, 141; different classes of, 287*a*; distinguished from connective adverbs, 46, *N.B.*, 264, *N.B.*; couple like cases and moods, 287.

CONNECTIVE ADVERB, see *Adverbs*.

Consequence, how expressed, 275.

Consonants, classified, 302 (3) *seq.*; changes of, 303 (4), (ii).

COPULATIVE, see *Conjunctions* and *Verb*.

Cor, no gen. plur., 106*a* (12).

CORRELATIVES, 38, 40 (4), 122.

Cos, no gen. plur., 106*a* (12).

Cratera (or *-em*), *crateras*, 109 (1), (iii).

Cucumerim, 106*a* (6).

Cujusmodi, used as adj., 208*a* (5).

Cum (prep.), enclitic, 140, *N.B.* (1); in composition, 140, *N.B.* (3).

Daps, no gen. plur., 106*a* (12).

DECLENSIONS, Latin, 103.

First, 104; masculine nouns, 104*a*; dat. and abl. plur. in *-abus*, 104*a* (2); gen. sing. in *-as*, 104*a* (2); in *-ai*, 104*a* (5); gen. plur. in *-um*, 104*a* (4); locative, 104, *N.B.*, 104*a* (3), 214*a* (2); Greek nouns, 109 (1); stem in *-a*, 303 (5).

Second, 105; genders in, 105*a* (1); vocatives in *-i*, 105*a* (2); locative, 105, *N.B.*, 105*a* (3), 214*a* (2); words in *-er*, how declined, 105*a* (4), 111*a* (1); gen. sing.

in *i*, 105*a* (6), 111*a* (2); gen. plur. in *-um*, 105*a* (5), 111*a* (3); Greek nouns, 109 (1), (ii); stem in *-o*, 303 (5).

Third, divisions of, 106; inflexions of, 106; genders in, 106*a* (1); words in *-er*, how declined, 112 (1), *N.B.*; locative, 106, *N.B.*, 106*a* (2), 214*a* (2); gen. plur. of parasyllabics in *-um*, 106*a* (3), 112*a* (4); of imparisyllabics in *-ium*, 106*a* (4), 112*a* (3); wanting, 106*a* (12); acc. sing. in *-im*, 106*a* (6); in *-em* or *-im*, 106*a* (7); abl. sing. in *-i*, 106*a* (8); in *-e* or *-i*, 106*a* (9), 112*a* (2); of present participles, 112*a* (2); nom. plur. in *-ia*, 106*a* (10); acc. plur. in *-es* or *-is*, 106*a* (11); Greek nouns, 109 (1), (iii); stem in *-i* or *consonants*, 303 (5).

Fourth, a variety of *Third*, 107, *N.B.*; inflexions of, 107; genders in, 107*a* (1); dat. sing. in *-u*, 107*a* (2); dat. and abl. plur. in *-ubus*, 107*a* (3).

Fifth, 108, 108*a* (2); genders in, 108*a* (1); gen. and dat. sing. in *-e*, 108*a* (3).

Of *Demonstratives*, 117, 117*a*; of *Relatives*, 118, 118*a*; of *Interrogatives*, 119, 119*a*; of *Indefinites*, 120, 120*a*; of *Numerals*, 125.

Delon (or *-um*), 109 (1), (ii).

DEMONSTRATIVE, see *Adjective* and *Adverb*.

DEPONENT Verbs, 134 (1); deponent participles of active verbs, 134 (9).

Diastole, 311 (9).

Dies, gender of, 108*a* (1).

DIMINUTIVE Nouns, 109 (11), (i); adjectives, 113*a*; verbs, 134 (6).
Diphthongs, 302 (2), (*d*); changes of, 303 (4), (iv).

Disjunctive clauses, noun, adverb, and co-ordinate, distinguished, 282*a* (5); conjunctions, 288*a* (2).

Do, 137 (i); in composition, 137 (i), *N.B.*

Domī, locative, 105*a* (3); 107*a* (4).

Domus, declined, 107*a* (4); construction of, 214.

Dos, 106a (4).
Duabus, 104a (2).
Duim, 137 (i).
Dum, moods with, 285.
Duo, declined, 104a (2), *N.B.*; distinguished from *bini*, 126 (1).

Ecce, construction of, 142, *N.B.* (2).
Ecqui(s), 119a (2).
Ecthlipsis, 311 (5), *N.B.*
Ēdo, 137 (f).

Ego, declined, 115 (1); acc. used for voc., 115a; *mi* for *mihi*, 115a (2).

Eheu, construction of, 142, *N.B.* (1).
Ejusmodi, used as adjective, 208a (5).

Elision, 311 (5).

Ellipsis, 311 (11).

En, construction of, 142, *N.B.* (2).

Enallage, 311 (17).

Enclitic, *N.B.* 139.

Enlargement of subject and predicate, 50.

Eo, 137 (c).

Euphemism, 311 (34).

Exterus, use of, 113a (2), (d).

Fabrum, 105a (5).

Facio, 137 (h); in composition, *ibid.*, *N.B.*

Factitive, see *Verb*.

Familias, gen., 104a (2).

Fari, defective, 135 (g).

Farre, 106a (8).

Faux, 106a (4).

Faxo, 133a (9); 137 (h).

Fearing, verbs of, construction with, 278.

Fero, 137 (e).

FIGURES OF SPEECH (of Etymology, Prosody, Syntax, Rhetoric), 311.

Filiabus, 104a (2).

Fio, 137 (d).

Foris, 214a (3).

Fractions, how expressed in Latin, 126 (2), (3).

Frater, 106a (3).

Fruor, a middle verb, 211a.

GENDER, 14, 18 (3); rules for, in Latin, 1st Decl., 104a (1); 2d, 105a (1); 4th, 107a (1); 5th, 108a (1); general rules, 109 (3).

Gener, 105a (4).

GENITIVE (for inflections, see *Declensions*).

nature of, 101, * * 201a, 208a (1-5); qualifies nouns, 208; nouns understood, 208a, *N.B.*; *objective* and *subjective*, 208 (2), (3); of *definition* (possessive and demonstrative), 208a (1), 208, *N.B.* (1), (2); of *quality* and *quantity*, 208a (2); of gerund with *sum* to express effect, 208a (2) (iv); qualifying verbs, 208 (2) and *N.B.* (2), 213a (1); adjectives, *ibid.*; with words of *plenty* and *want*, 213, 213a; with *opus est* and *usus est*, 213a (2); of *value*, 217 (2); with verbs of *buying* and *selling*, 217a (2); of *charge*, 218; of *being remembered* or *forgotten*, 224; of *object felt for*, 225; with *refert* and *interest*, 226.

GERUND, 129 (5); used for infinitive, 129 (5), *N.B.* (1), (2); as subject, 201a (2); takes case of its verb, 203a (1); qualified by adverbs, * * 210a.

Glis, 106a (4).

Grimm's Law, 303 (8).

Hadria, masc., 104a (1).

Hei, construction of, 142, *N.B.* (3).

Hendiadys, 311 (16).

Heteroclite nouns, 109 (4).

Heterogeneous nouns, 109 (5).

Hiatus, 311 (6).

Hic, demonstrative of 1st person, 117, 269, *N.B.*

Hispalim, 106a (6).

Hujusmodi, used as adjective, 208a (5).

Humi, locative, 105a (3), 214a (3).

Hyperbaton, 311 (20).

Hyperbole, 311 (27).

Idem and *idem*, 117a (1).

Igne (or *-i*), 106a (9).

Ille, demonstrative of 3d person, 117.

Illic, declined, 117a (2).

IMPERATIVE, nature of, 67, 248; subject of, 7, *N.B.* (1), (c); tense of, in Latin, 129 (3); forms in *-to* and *-tor*, 133a (3), (4); when used in prohibitions, 133a (4), *N.B.*

- IMPERSONAL verbs (active and passive), 239-242.
- Indeclinable nouns, 109 (2); gender of, 109 (3), (iii).
- INDEFINITE, see *Adjectives* and *Adverbs*.
- INDICATIVE mood, nature of, 67, 74 (4), 129 (1), 247.
- INDIRECT or REMOTE OBJECT, see *Object*.
- Inferus*, use of, 113a (2), (e).
- INFINITIVE of Latin verbs, 129 (4); as subject, 201a (2); as object, 203a (2); used instead of gerund, 129 (5), *N.B.*
- Present Active* in *-ier*, 133a (8); *Future Passive*, how supplied, 129 (4), *N.B.*, 241a (2); qualified adverbially, * * 210a; nature of infinitive, 250; historic infinitive, 254a (7).
- INFINITIVE clauses, how used, 254, 255; subject omitted, 254a (4).
- INFLEXION, *N.B.* 76; summary of inflexions, 77.
- Ingeni*, 105a (6).
- Inquam*, defective, parts of, 135 (e)—see 127 (1), *N.B.* (2); construction of, 254a (5).
- Interest of money, Roman, 306 (5).
- Interest*, construction of, 226.
- INTERJECTION, 48, 142.
- INTERROGATIVE, see *Adjectives* and *Adverbs*.
- INTERROGATIVE clause, how used, 256.
- INTRANSITIVE, see *Verb*.
- Intransitive verbs used impersonally in passive, 241.
- Irony, 311 (25).
- Iste*, demonstrative of 2d person, 117, 269, *N.B.*
- Istic*, declined, 117a (2).
- Ita—ut*, 122, *N.B.*
- Jubare*, 106a (8).
- Furatus*, 134 (9).
- Juvenis*, 106a (3).
- Lacubus*, 107a (3).
- Length, Roman measures of, 307.
- Letters classified, 302.
- Levasso*, 133a (9).
- Liber* (Bacchus), 105a (4).
- Licet*, 286 (4).
- Lis*, 106a (4).
- Literature, Latin, periods of, 313.
- Litotes*, 311 (28).
- LOCATIVE CASE, 101, 104, *N.B.*, 201a; used for place where, 214, 214a.
- Malo*, 137 (b).
- Mas*, 106a (4).
- Mater*, 106a (3).
- Matrōna*, masc., 104a (1).
- Memini*, defective, 135 (c); tenses, 135 (c), *N.B.*; construction of, 224a.
- Messem* (or *-im*), 106a (7).
- Metaphor, 311 (21).
- Metathesis*, 311 (4).
- Metonymy*, 311 (23).
- Meus*, vocative of, 116a (1).
- Middle verbs, 134, *N.B.*, 211a.
- Militiæ*, locative, 104a (3), 214a (3).
- Mille*, declension and use of, 125 (1), *N.B.*
- Miseret*, construction of, 225a.
- MODAL, see *Verb*.
- Money, Roman, 306.
- Months, names of, their nature, 109 (3), *N.B.*; declension of, 112 (1), *N.B.*
- MOOD, see *Verb*.
- Mood notions, 247-250; synopsis of mood construction, 288, 289.
- Motive, how expressed, 276.
- Mus*, 106a (4).
- Names, Roman, 309.
- Naven* (or *-im*), 106a (7).
- Nectare*, 106a (8).
- Nequam*, comparison of, 113a (1); indeclinable in positive, 113 (2) (b).
- Neuter nouns, declension of, 103 (2).
- Nix*, 106a (4).
- Nolo*, 137 (b).
- NOMINATIVE, nature of, 101, * * 201a.
- Nostras*, 116a (3).
- NOUNS, defined, 4, 8 (3), 10; *proper* and *common*, 12; *patronymic*, 109 (1); *diminutive*, 109 (11); *collective*, 109 (11), (ii); *abstract*, 109 (11), (iii); *verbal*, 65; number, 13, 18 (2); gender, 14, 18 (3); case defined, 41-45; inflexions, 77 (1)

- NOUNS, LATIN, inflexions of, 109 ; gender, 109 (3) ; indeclinable, 109 (2) ; heteroclite, 109 (4) ; heterogeneous, 109 (5) ; without sing., 109 (6) ; with special meaning in plur., 109 (8) ; qualification of, 205, * * 206, 207-209.
- NUMBER, in nouns, 13, 18 (2) ; 102 ; in verbs, 19.
- NUMERALS, 31 (1) ; cardinal, ordinal, distributive, adverbial, 123-125 ; distributives, when used for cardinals, 126 (1).
- Numeration, Roman, 304.
- Nummum*, 105a (5).
- O!* construction of, 142, *N.B.* (1).
- OBJECT, 23 ; DIRECT, 23 (1), and *N.B.*, 28 (4), 203 ; becomes subject of passive, 62, *N.B.*, 203 (2) ; INDIRECT (REMOTE), 23 (2), and *N.B.*, 28 (5), * * 227 ; object case in English, 43, *N.B.*
- OBLIQUE CASES, 101, *N.B.* (c) ; CONSTRUCTION, 254, 255 ; STATEMENT and QUESTION, 258 ; SPEECH (*oratio obliqua*), rules for, 265-271.
- Obliviscor*, construction of, 224a.
- Occisit*, 133a (9).
- Odi*, tenses of, 135.
- Olli*, 117a (3).
- Onomatopœia*, 311 (36).
- Optimates*, 106a (4).
- Opus est*, construction of, 213, 213a.
- Oxymoron*, 311 (37).
- Palus*, 106a (5).
- Panis*, 106a (3).
- Paronomasia*, 311 (38).
- PARTICIPLE, nature of, 65, *N.B.* (2) ; Latin participles, 129 (7) ; *Present*, declined, 112a, 129 (7), 132a (4) ; *Perfect*, 129 (7) ; *Future*, 129 (7) ; gerundive, 129 (7) ; deponent participles of active verbs, 134 (9).
- Partitive words take genitive, 208, *N.B.* (1).
- PARTS OF SPEECH, 9, 10, 11, 47.
- Partubus*, 107a (3).
- Pater*, 106a (3).
- Patronymics, 109.
- Pelvem* (or *-im*), 106a (7).
- Penates*, 106a (4).
- PERFECT distinguished from PRETERITE, 129 (1), *N.B.*
- PERIPHRASTIC tenses, 128.
- PERSON in nouns and pronouns, 16, 18 (5) ; in verbs, 20, 127 (1) ; of relative, 209 (2) ; person-endings in Latin, their nature, 127 (1).
- PHRASE, 7, *N.B.* (3), 204a, *N.B.*
- Piget*, construction of, 225a.
- Place, how expressed (*where*, *whither*, *whence*), 214, 214a.
- Pleonasm*, 311 (15).
- Plus*, compared, 113a (1) ; how used in positive, 113a (2).
- Pœnitet*, construction of, 225a.
- Portubus*, 107a (3).
- Possession, when expressed by gen., 208a (1).
- POSSESSIVE, see *Adjectives*.
- Possessive case in English, 43, *N.B.*
- Possum*, 137a.
- Potior*, a middle verb, 211a ; takes abl. or gen., 211.
- Pransus*, 134 (9).
- PREDICATE, 7 and *N.B.* (1), (2), 8 (6), (8) ; enlargement of, 50.
- Predicative words distinguished from attributes, 33, 34 (2), * * 206a.
- PREPOSITIONS, 44, 45 (4) ; in *Latin*, with acc., 140 (1) ; with abl., 140 (2) ; with acc. or abl., 140 (3) ; enclitic, 140, *N.B.* (1) ; following case, 140, *N.B.* (3) ; when employed, 201a, 210a, 212a ; force sometimes retained in composition, 221a (4).
- PRETERITE, distinguished from PERFECT, 129, *N.B.* (2).
- PRICE, how expressed, 217.
- Principal verb, 243.
- Prior*, nature and declension of, 125 (2), *N.B.*
- Pro!* construction of, 142, *N.B.* (1).
- Prohibesso*, 133a (9).
- Prohibitions, in Latin, how expressed, 133a (4), *N.B.*
- Proles*, 106a (3).
- PRONOUNS, defined, 15 and *N.B.*, 17, 18 (6), 47 (3), 115 ; declension in Latin, 115, 115a ; used in oblique speech, 270, 270a.

PROSODY, 310.

Prosopopœia, 311 (29).

Protasis, 280, 281.

Pudet, construction of, 239.

Puppem (or *-im*), 106a (7).

Purpose, how expressed, 277.

Qu, considered as one letter, 113a (5), *N.B.*

Quæro, defective, 135 (*f*).

QUALIFY, term explained, 11, *N.B.* (1), (2).

Quam (than), with comparative, 235, 235a, 236, 237.

Quamvis, 286 (3).

Quanquam, 286 (2).

Quantity, how indicated, 103 (3).

Queo, 137 (*g*).

Quercubus, 107a (3).

Questions, how introduced, 260; disjunctive questions, 259, *N.B.* (2); in oblique speech, 260, 270, 270a; rhetorical questions, 270a (2).

Qui? (*quis?*), *quod?* (*quid?*), 119a; indefinite, 120a.

Quicumque, 118a.

Quidam, 120a.

Quilibet, 120a (3).

Quin, use of, 277a.

Quispiam, 120a (3).

Quisquam, 120a (3); declined, 120, *N.B.*

Quisque, 120a (3).

Quisquis, 118a (1) and *N.B.*

Quivis, 120a (3).

Quod clauses, 253, 261, 272.

Quominus, use of, 277a (4).

Quum (when), moods with, 284; *quum—tum*, 122, 264, 285a.

Recordor, construction of, 224a.

Rēfert, construction of, 226.

RELATIVE, see *Adjectives* and *Adverbs*.

RELATIVE CLAUSE, qualifies a noun, 209; construction of, *ib.*

Reminiscor, 224a.

Reste, 106a (9).

Restem (or *-im*), 106a (7).

ROOTS, 303 (1); verbal and pronominal, 303 (2).

Ruri, locative, 106a (2).

Rus, construction of, 214.

Salve, 135 (*h*).

Securem (or *-im*), 106a (7).

Securi, 106a (9).

SEMI-DEPONENTS, 134 (2).

Senex, 106a (3).

SENTENCE, defined, 2, 8 (2); parts of, 3, 10, 201, * * *; enlarged, 50, 206, * * *; SIMPLE, 52, 58 (1); COMPLEX, 53, 58 (3); COMPOUND, 53, 58 (6), 287; analysis of, 49-51, 56, 57, 78, 301.

Sequēda, masc., 104a (1).

SEQUENCE OF MOODS, 247-250; of TENSES, 129 (2), (*a*), (*b*), 251-253.

Servitus, 106a (5).

Sestertium, 105a (5).

Sexcenti, of indefinite number, 124, *N.B.*

Si, use of, 281 *seq.*; is never interrogative, 282a (5); derivation of, 264a.

Sic—ut, 122, *N.B.*

Simile, 311 (21), *N.B.*

Sitim, 106a (6).

Socer, 105a (4).

Space, how expressed, 215, 215a.

Specubus, 107a (3).

STEMS, 303 (3), *seq.*; in the various declensions, 303 (5); in the various conjugations, 303 (6).

Strix, 106a (4).

SUBJECT, 6, 7, *N.B.*, 8 (6), (7); of a finite verb, 201, 201a; not separately expressed, 201a (1); enlarged, 50; compound, 57, *N.B.*, 201a (3); collective, 201a (4).

SUBJUNCTIVE, nature of, 67, 74 (4), 129 (2), and *N.B.* 249, 266; indirect question, 67, *N.B.*; (*Latin*) characteristic of, 127 (3), *N.B.* (1); how Englished, *ibid.*, *N.B.* (2); used independently (conjunctive), force optative or potential, 129 (2); force of tenses, *ibid.*; used subordinately (subjunctive), signification, 129; force of tenses, 129 (2), (iii), 282a (2); general rules for subjunctive, 273 *seq.*; subjunctive of inexact definition, 279; with relative, 279, 262 (*a*).

SUBSTANTIVE, see *Nouns* and *Pronouns*.

Sui, 115 (3).

Sum, 132.

SUPERLATIVE degree, 59; absolute superlative, 59, *N.B.*; complement of, 60, 61 (4); how formed in Latin adjectives, 113 (2); of words in *-er*, 113 (2), (*b*); of words in *-ilis*, 113 (2), (*c*); irregular, 113*a*; in Latin adverbs, 114, 114*a*.

Superus, 113*a* (2), (*f*).

SUPINES, 129 (6); take case of their verbs, 203*a* (1); qualified by adverbs, 209*a*; in *-um*, nature and construction of, 214*a* (6); in *-u*, 210*a* (2).

Synæresis, 311 (7).

Synalæpha, 311 (5), *N.B.*

Synapheia, 311 (5), *N.B.*

Syncope, 311 (3).

Synecdoche, 311 (24).

Synesis, 311 (18).

Systole, 311 (10).

Tædet, construction of, 225 (*a*).

Tam—quam, 122, *N.B.*

Tautology, 311 (15), *N.B.*

Taxis, 133*a* (9).

TENSE, see *Verb*.

Sequence of tenses, 129 (2), (*a*), (*b*), 251-253.

Tenus, follows its case, 140, *N.B.* (3).

Tiberim, 106*a* (6).

Time, construction of, 216; Roman measures of, 305.

TRAJECTIVE words, 23, 25, 205, 227, 227*a*.

Trans, in composition, 221*a* (4).

Tribubus, 107*a* (3).

Trope, 311 (25).

Tu, declined, 115 (2); acc. used for voc. 115*a*.

Turrem (or *-im*), 106*a* (7).

Tussim, 106*a* (6).

Ulixei, 109 (1), (iii).

Ullus, 120*a* (3), 121.

Unus declined, 125; use in plural, 125, *N.B.*

Usus est, construction of, 213, 213*a*.

Ut, various uses of, 275*a*; derivation, of, 264*a*.

Uterque, 121.

Utor, 211, 211*a*.

Væ, construction of, 142, *N.B.* (3).

Vale, valête, used with special meaning, 135 (i).

Value, how expressed, 217 (2).

Vates, 106*a* (3).

Vel, distinguished from *aut*, 288*a* (3).

VERB, defined, 5, 8 (4), 10; use of, 19, 20, 74 (1); agreement of, 201, 201*a*; complements of, 21, 22, 23, 28 (1), 201-205; how qualified, 35-37, 41, 101, 205, 210; PERSON, 20; how marked in Latin, 127 (1); VOICE, active and passive, 62, 74 (2); how marked in Latin, 127 (4); TENSES, distinction of, 68-74; how marked in Latin, 73; sequence of, 129 (2), 251, 253; periphrastic tenses, 128, 129 (4); MOODS, distinction of, 66, 67, 129; meaning of, 247-250; VERB, FINITE AND INFINITE, distinction of, 63, 64, 74 (3); verb infinite, parts of, their nature, 65, 74 (5), 129 (4-7); force of tenses in verb infinite, 72, 251, 252; DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERBS—REGULAR, 130, 133; contractions admissible, 133*a* (2); AUXILIARY, 27, 74 (8); COPULATIVE, 22, 28 (2), 202; DEFECTIVE, 130, *N.B.*, 135; DEPONENT, 134 (1); SEMI-DEPONENT, 134 (2); DESIDERATIVE, 134 (5); DIMINUTIVE, 134 (6); FACTITIVE, 26, 28 (8), 203, 220, 220*a*; FREQUENTATIVE, 134 (3); IMITATIVE, 134 (7); IMPERSONAL and *quasi* IMPERSONAL, 239-242; INCEPTIVE, 134 (4); INTRANSITIVE, 24, 28 (6); with accusative, 222; MODAL, 73, *N.B.*, 74 (9), 204; *quasi* PASSIVE, 134 (8); TRAJECTIVE, 25, 227, 234; TRANSITIVE, 24, 28 (6), 203; Verbs *sentiendi et declarandi*, construction of, 255, 254*a* (3); of *asking, commanding, advising, and striving*, 277*a* (2).

VERBALS—(1) parts of verb infinite, 65, *N.B.*, 129 (4-7), * * * 210; English verbals in *-ing*, distinction of, 65, *N.B.* (2), 129 (7), *N.B.* (2).

- (2) derived from verbs, sometimes retain case of verb, * * II., 210a; in *-bundus* or *-cundus*, 133 (10), (a); in *-bilis*, 133 (9), (b); in *-ax*, 133 (9), (c); in *-idus*, 133 (9), (d).
- Versus*, follows its case, 140, *N.B.* (3).
- Verubus*, 107a (3).
- Vescor*, 134, 211a.
- Vesper*, 105a (4); *vesperi*, 105a (3).
- Vestras*, 116a (3).
- Virum*, 105a (5).
- Vis*, declined, 106a (4), (e).
- VOCATIVE CASE, 48, 101, 201a.
- Volo*, 137 (b).
- VOWELS, 302 (2); changes of, 303 (4); thematic vowel, 303 (4), (a).
- Weight, Roman measures of, 306.
- Worth, 217.
- Zeugma*, 311 (14).

THE END.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 231 625 6